

NEW LATIN PRIMER SERIES.

EDITED BY PROF. POSTGATE, LITT.D.

Latin Prose for Lower Forms.

BEING A SERIES OF EXERCISES

ADAPTED TO

THE NEW AND FIRST LATIN PRIMERS.

BY

M. A. BAYFIELD, M.A.

HEAD MASTER, CHRIST COLLEGE, BRECON; EDITOR OF THE 'ION' AND 'ALCESTIS'
OF EURIPIDES, ETC.

CASSELL & ~~COMPANY~~¹², LIMITED:

LONDON, PARIS & MELBOURNE.

1891.

[ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.]

PREFACE.

THE following Exercises have been prepared by me at Prof. Postgate's request, as a companion book to his *New* and *First Latin Primers*. The whole of the sheets have been carefully read by him, and the work owes much to his valuable criticism. He has also contributed the preliminary exercises on reading and pronunciation.

The attention of teachers is drawn to the *Additional Exercises*, 81ff., which supplement those that precede.

I have to thank my friend and colleague, Mr. C. W. Horsburgh, for valuable assistance, and my friend Mr. Walter Fairbanks, of Clifton College, for some useful suggestions.

Criticisms and corrections from those engaged in teaching will be gratefully received.

M. A. B.

MALVERN COLLEGE,
February, 1890.

CONTENTS.



	PAGE
Pronunciation and Reading	I
Simple Agreement—	
Nouns and Adjectives	4
Verbs	5
The Finite Verb (Moods and Tenses)	7
The Relative	8
Talis, Qualis ; Tantus, Quantus	9
Miscellaneous Examples on the foregoing (embracing Irregular Verbs)	10
Composite Agreement	13

THE CASES.

Accusative of Extent	14
— Sphere of Action ; Cognate Accusative	15
— Motion towards a Place and after Prepositions	16
— after Prepositions (additional)	18
Accusative with Verbs compounded with Prepositions	19
Double Accusative	20
Accusative with Infinitive	21
Dative of Person Interested, Person Judging, Person Possessing	22
— of Indirect Object	23
— with Verbs compounded with Prepositions	25
— of Use or Purpose Served	26
Genitive with Nouns	27
— with Verbs	28
— with Adjectives	29
Ablative Proper (Motion, Origin, Agent, Separation, Comparison)	31
— Instrumental (Instrument, Cause, Cost, Amount of Difference, Manner, Quality, Attendant Circumstances or Ablative Absolute)	32

	PAGE
Ablative Absolute (additional)	35
— Locative (Place where, Route, Part or Thing concerned, Time at which, Time within which)	37
— with Verbs and Adjectives	39
— with Opus and Usus	40
— with Prepositions	41
Locative (Place, Value)	42
Comparison	44
Adjective for Adverb	46
Special Uses of Adjectives and Pronouns	47
Miscellaneous Examples on the Cases	48
PRONOUNS	55
Demonstrative Pronouns	57
Reflexive Pronouns	59
Alius, Alter, Ceteri	60
Uter, Uterque	61
Indefinite Pronouns (A)	63
— (B)	65
Co-ordinate Conjunctions (A)	66
— (B)	68
Ne quidem, Nedum, Quam maximus, &c.	69
THE FINITE VERB.	
Insertion of Pronouns, Indefinite Use of the Persons	70
Impersonal Verbs (Piget, Pudet, &c.)	71
— (continued)	73
The Passive Voice	74
— (continued)	75
Special Uses of the Tenses	76
Imperative Mood	77
Subjunctive of Desire (Wishes, Requests)	78
Supines and Gerunds	79
The Gerundive (A)	81
— (B)	82
The Future Infinitives, Historic Infinitive	83
Questions	84

THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.	PAGE
Substantival Clauses—	
Quod with Indic., Dependent Questions	86
Verbs of <i>Entreating, Commanding, Advising, &c.</i> , Timeo and Vereor ne	87
Adverbial Clauses—	
Temporal Clauses (Dum, Cum, Ut)	89
— (Antequam, Postquam)	91
Modal Clauses	91
Indicative of Indefinite Frequency	92
Consecutive and Final Clauses	93
Consecutive Clauses additional (Tantum abest ut, Dignus est ut, Quam ut, &c.)	94
Consecutive Clauses with Quin	95
Verbs of <i>Preventing</i> and <i>Declining</i>	96
The Subjunctive in Relative Clauses—	
Purpose and Result	97
Character or Class. Sunt qui	99
Qui quidem, &c. Relative Causal (Quippe qui)	99
The Subjunctive in Temporal Clauses	101
The Subjunctive and Indicative in Causal Clauses	102
Contrasted uses of Dum with Indicative and Subjunctive	103
Conditional Statements	104
Concessive Clauses	111
Participles in Conditional and other Clauses	112
Mixed Types of Conditional Statement	114
RATIO OBLIQUA	115
Changes of Construction of Indicative	116
Changes of Construction of Subjunctive	117
Changes of Person	118
Change of Time	120
Questions in Oratio Obliqua	121
Commands and Wishes in Oratio Obliqua	124

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

Cases of Nouns	129
Verbs (A)	130
— (B), with some of the more difficult Nouns	134

Translation of <i>Can have, Might have, Ought to have, &c.</i>	PAGE
Verbs taking ut and ne (consecutive) with Subjunctive	138
Utrum, Sive, &c.	140
The Roman Calendar	142
TRANSLATION OF READING EXERCISES	144
VOCABULARY	149
	153

NOTE.—Rules for the Order of Words will be found at
 Exx. 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 10.

LATIN PROSE FOR LOWER FORMS.

PRONUNCIATION AND READING.

(See *New Latin Primer* 8 ff., 256 ff.)

Pronunciation of VOWELS and DIPHTHONGS :

ǣ as in *aha* ! ā as in *bah* !
ě as in *met* ē as *é* in French *état* or *a* in E. *state*.
ī as in *fīt* ī as *ee* in *feet*.
ō as in *not* ō as *o* in French *chose* or E. *note*.
y as French *u* in *lune*.

The Latin Diphthongs are to be produced by pronouncing the vowels which compose them so quickly that they appear to form but one sound.

Of the separate diphthongs, *ei* is the English *ey* in grey. The nearest English diphthong to *ae* is *ai* in *Isaiah* (pronounced broadly and nearly as *eye*) ; to *au*, *ou* in *house* (pronounced broadly) ; and to *oe*, *oi* in *boil*.

CONSONANTS.—These are as in English except :

c always *hard* as *k*. **g** always *hard* as *g* in *get*.
r rolled as in French. **s** always sharp as in *his*.
 i consonant (j) as Eng. *y* as in *ye*.
 u consonant (or **v**) as Eng. *w* in *we*.
x always like *ks*. **z** as *dz* in *adze*.
 bs, **bt** as *ps*, *pt*.
ch, **th**, **ph** very nearly as *k*, *t*, *p* respectively.

LATIN PROSE

n and **m** when standing before *c, g, q* are to be pronounced as *ng*.

ci, ti are to be pronounced as *kee, tee*, not as *she*.

In pronouncing Doubled Consonants, each should be given distinctly. Thus, *vel-lēt* should be pronounced well-let.

QUANTITY.—Do not shorten Unaccented Vowels : but pronounce *fē-li-ci* as *fay-lee-key* ; *mōlis* (D. Abl. Plur. of *mōlā a mill*) as *mō-leece*, *mōlis* (G. Sing. of *mōlēs mass*) as *mow-līs*, and distinguish both from *mōlis thou-grindest* and *mol-līs soft*.

Do not lengthen Accented short vowels.

Do not pronounce *cībūs food* as *sigh-bus* or *kye-bus*.

A vowel before two consonants is generally short by nature ; but not always so. Thus *est he is* rhymes with *west*, but *ēst he-eats* rhymes with *waist*.

Final Vowels and final **-m** preceded by a vowel are very slightly heard if the next word begins with a vowel or *h*. In this position they are not counted in verse. These are marked in italics in the following examples.

EXERCISES.

(a) 1. Pronounce in the same time as *farce* (—) : *fās*, *mōs*, *cōs*, *iūs*.

2. *Sāl*, *sōl*, is *thou goest*, *hīs*, *sic*, *sīn*, *quīn*, *dūc*.

3. Pronounce in the same time as *pen-knife* (— —) : *pen-nīs*, *vil-lōs*, *il-lōs*, *pestēs*, *istic*, *mēnsās*, *rārōs*.

4. Pronounce in the same time as *quinine* (∪ —) : *mālōs* (adj.), *mānūs*, *pēdēs*, *trāhō*, *rūēns*, *hōnōs*, *dēōs*.

5. Pronounce in the same time as *city* (∪ ∪) : *prēmē*, *trāhē*, *pētē*, *nīsī*, *dēā*, *mōdō*, *gērē*, *cāpē*.

* In these exercises the quantity-marks refer to the **vowels**. All the vowels which are not marked as long are to be pronounced short.

A translation of the Exercises will be found on p. 149.

6. Pronounce in the same time as *big black dog* (— — —): *fēlicēs, āctūrōs, turbārī, turbās'sent, audivī, ingentis.*

7. Pronounce in the same time as *on all fours* (o — —): *āmārī, āmārun't, cōemptis, inānēs.*

8. Pronounce in their proper time: *il'ligātūs, mīserīcors, pūs, lēpūs, dēspērātī, sciō, āmābātūr, āmābīmīnī.*

(b) 1. *pēs citūs. mī pātēr! exercitūi tūō.*

2. *incūs il'ā ingēns. cūr hōc nōnvīs?*

3. *eccē tibi mōns altūs!*

4. *trabs māgnā. mēn' exirē iūbēs? vēr sācrum.*

5. *viūtūr hōc pāctō. saepē caepē cēpi. coepī.*

6. *prō(i)c' ōryzam. hīc an'nūs. haec ānūs.*

7. *rēs paucae. ēs quā' ēs. ei mīhī!*

8. *infēnsō Phoebo. numquam absis!*

9. *cui bōnō? Bac'chī thyr'sūs. ceu sc'yp'hūs.*

(c) *Gal'lia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incōlunt Belgae, āliam Āquitānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gal'lī appel'lantūr. hī omnēs linguā institūtis lēgibus inter sē diff'erunt. Gal'lōs ab Aquitānīs Gārumna flūmen dividit.*

(d) *Hōrum fortis'simī sunt Belgae, proptēreā quōd ā cultū atque hūmānitātē prōvinciae longis'simē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad eff'eminandōs animōs pertinent, important; proximīque sunt Germānīs quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt quibuscum continenter bel'lum gērunt.*

(e) *Militat omnis āmāns ēt hābet sūa castra Cūpidō;*

At'tice, crēde mīhī; militat omnis āmāns.

quae bellō est habilis, Venerī quōque convenit aetās:
turpe sēnex miles, turpe sēnilis āmor.

pervigilant ambō; terrā requiēscit uterque;

il'le fōrēs dominae servat, āt il'le dūcis.

militis officium longa est vīa: mīt'te puel'lām;

strēnuus, exemptō finē, sēquētūr āmāns.

Simple Agreement.—A.

Adjectives, when used as Attributes or Predicates, agree with their Nouns in *Gender*, *Number*, and *Case* : *vir mālūs a bad man* ; *lēx bōnā est the law is good* ; *lōcūs dēsertūs vidētūr the place seems deserted*.

Under other circumstances they agree with them in *Gender* or in *Gender* and *Number*, according to the sense, as *optimē rēgum best of kings*.

Participles and Pronouns used as Adjectives follow the same rule as Adjectives.

Nouns in apposition to other Nouns agree with them in *Number* and *Case* : *Tūllus rēx King Tullus*.

Rule for Order of Words.—Ordinary Adjectives, Genitives, and other Attributes generally follow the Nouns to which they belong.

I.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Three wise princes. | 18. In a very-brief space. |
| 2. Cruel wild-beasts. | 19. O best of queens ! |
| 3. Of three lofty trees. | 20. Three very-small cities. |
| 4. The good king. | 21. To Brutus, my dear friend. |
| 5. Loving wives. | 22. Two small kingdoms. |
| 6. For prudent citizens. | 23. These very-swift boats. |
| 7. Of the growing flowers. | 24. Swifter days. |
| 8. Those black sheep. | 25. A mighty battle. |
| 9. By a bright day. | 26. These difficult works. |
| 10. Of the huge buildings. | 27. Of that beautiful maiden. |
| 11. Of Caesar the general. | 28. That happier work. |
| 12. Very-old lions. | 29. More works. |
| 13. Three better gifts. | 30. By a mighty sea. |
| 14. A more angry wife. | 31. More-pleasant words. |
| 15. Of two dancing maidens. | 32. In the swift sea. |
| 16. O most foolish of philosophers ! | 33. For beautiful daughters. |
| 17. For a more-wicked daughter. | 34. Of smaller cities. |

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 35. Of wise judges. | 40. Dogs, a swift race. |
| 36. By a very-large work. | 41. Of my father, the king. |
| 37. More boys. | 42. From-Rome, an ancient city. |
| 38. Very-many trees. | |
| 39. Of loving daughters. | |

Simple Agreement.—B.

(VERBS.)

A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in *Number* and *Person*: *tēta trēmīt, fūgērē fēiac the earth quakes, the wild beasts have fled*: *tū pulsās, egō vāpulō you beat, I am beaten.*

Pronouns in the Nom are not inserted except for the sake of Emphasis or Distinction. The emphatic Pronoun is often expressed in English by *It is I who, It is he who, &c.*: *tū cānēbās, ēgō audiēbam it was you who were singing, it was I who was listening.*

Examples marked * are to be translated both by Indic. and by the corresponding tense of the Subjunctive.

2.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. We were loving. | 14. He will feel. |
| 2. They will sing. | 15. Ye had advised. |
| 3. We shall rule. | 16. To be ruled. |
| 4. They will have loved. | 17. They had spoken.* |
| 5. Thou wilt advise. | 18. Thou art loved. |
| 6. Hear thou. | 19. You had ruled. |
| 7. Thou hast advised. | 20. To be advised. |
| 8. He was ordering.* | 21. About-to-hear. |
| 9. They will grow. | 22. Thou art being led. |
| 10. To have led. | 23. They had been led. |
| 11. They were seeing. | 24. We shall be advised. |
| 12. He was being heard. | 25. Ye were being heard. |
| 13. He is being buried. | 26. Thou hast been praised. |

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 27. We have ruled.* | 59. It is I who shall use. |
| 28. Thou wilt be ruled. | 60. He had encouraged. |
| 29. I am being praised.* | 61. He was using. |
| 30. About-to-rule (pl.). | 62. Thou usest.* |
| 31. Thou art being heard. | 63. We have encouraged. |
| 32. They open. | 64. She had encouraged. |
| 33. We open. | 65. Thou teachest. |
| 34. <i>We</i> had been praised. | 66. It is we who were using. |
| 35. He is being heard. | 67. Thou wast being led. |
| 36. About-to-hear (pl.). | 68. It is she who will have used. |
| 37. Ye open. | 69. They had reported.* |
| 38. They will be praised. | 70. Thou must hear. |
| 39. It is he who will be led. | 71. We had buried.* |
| 40. We are being buried. | 72. Thou wilt use. |
| 41. Ye are being advised.* | 73. It is thou that must advise. |
| 42. It is ye who will be praised. | 74. He had praised.* |
| 43. Thou feelest. | 75. We were loving. |
| 44. Ye are being bound. | 76. It is she that had been ruled. |
| 45. They have been ruled | 77. She will have been heard. |
| 46. They are being heard. | 78. She had been. |
| 47. To be about to hear. | 79. He will use. |
| 48. <i>Thou</i> hast loved.* | 80. She has used. |
| 49. He used to love. | 81. Ye had been. |
| 50. It is she who has been heard. | 82. Thou hadst used. |
| 51. He has covered.* | 83. We shall use. |
| 52. He will have been heard. | 84. She had used. |
| 53. They will be. | 85. Ye were being loved. |
| 54. Thou wast. | 86. Ye will use. |
| 55. He had been surrounded. | 87. It had been reported. |
| 56. About to lead (pl.). | 88. It is they who will use. |
| 57. Ye were. | |
| 58. Ye had sinned.* | |

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 89. Thou wast using. | 95. We teach |
| 90. He will be heard. | 96. Thou hast advised.* |
| 91. Ye will run. | 97. We had heard.* |
| 92. He had ruled. | 98. We are being loved.* |
| 93. He will teach. | 99. We have been ruled.* |
| 94. He will have taught. | 100. Ye had been heard.* |

The Finite Verb.

The Object of a Transitive Verb is put in the Accusative Case : *vidēō fūrem I see a thief.*

Also a number of Intransitive Verbs, by a change of meaning, take an accusative of the Direct Object : *horrēt dōlōrem he shudders-at pain ; virgās trēmērě to tremble-at the rods.*

Personal and Possessive Pronouns are not inserted except for the sake of emphasis, or to avoid ambiguity : *pātrēm occidīt he slew (his) father ; pātrēm mēum occidistī you have slain my father.*

Rule for Order of Words.—The Subject stands first, the Finite Verb last.

3.

1. The general praises the good soldier.
2. The maiden did not fear the river.
3. The snake will bite her feet.
4. Thou hast made a long speech.
5. We shall govern a very great state.
6. The shepherds have fed their sheep.
7. Thy country has nourished thee.
8. This shepherd has not shorn his sheep.
9. We have hurled many javelins.
10. They had cut the threads of life.
11. I have washed thy feet.
12. Ye will have joined the two camps.
13. Thou hast pressed thy hair with-gold.
14. All have closed their houses.
15. Why hast thou despised my advice ?

13. The king had sent ambassadors.
17. The farmers have sown corn.
18. Fix nails. We have fixed them in-the-wall.
19. The robbers had seized all our goods.
20. These states carried on many and horrible wars.
21. The cities have received our armies.
22. Why hast thou deceived thy companions ?
23. Thou hast touched the matter with-a-needle.
24. Explain to-me these words.
25. Make a road ; say bold words ; lead the soldiers.
26. Ye had given your sons as-hostages.
27. Hast thou learned more difficult-things ?
28. We shall cover our bodies with-these shields.
29. The waves swallowed-up the ship.
30. We had not deceived the maiden.
31. The citizens grieved-for Caesar's death.
32. Who is able to walk-over the seas ?
33. We grieve-over Pompey's sad fate.
34. Why were ye silent-about (imperf.) the matter ?
35. Alexander will mourn-over Clitus' death.
36. We will complain-of that wicked crime.
37. We cannot laugh-at our friends' misfortunes.
38. The terrible monster was breathing-out flames.
39. Have ye been silent-about the disaster ?
40. My son waits-for his uncle's arrival.

The Relative.

1. If the Relative and the Antecedent are *in the Same Clause*, they agree in *Gender, Number, and Case*: quam avem cēpī rārā est *the bird which I have taken is scarce*.

2. If the Relative and Antecedent are *in Different Clauses*, they agree in *Gender and Number* only: āvis quam cēpī rārā est *the bird which I have taken is scarce*; cēpī āvem, quae rārā est *I have taken a bird which is scarce*; pūērī, quōs vidīmūs, currēbant *the boys whom we saw, were*

running ; *puellae, quās vidimūs, cānēbant the girls whom we saw, were singing* ; *pūēr, cui dēdi ābīit the boy to whom I gave it, has gone.*

Rule for Order of Words.—The Relative stands first in its Clause, except when governed by a Preposition, and in Case 2 (see above) comes as near to its Antecedent as possible.

In the first ten examples the Relative Clause has been printed in italics.

4.

1. He *who loves God*, loves himself.
2. They burned the city *which they had captured.*
3. She pointed to her son, *whom the robbers received kindly.*
4. Shew us thy son, *who is now king.*
5. *What flowers I have*, I will send to-morrow.
6. This is the wife *whom Jason married.*
7. This is Agamemnon, *who was slain.*
8. Leave a labour *which is useless.*
9. He killed the men *who wished to kill him.*
10. The hare *which I was chasing*, has fled.
11. Hear the words of the orator who loves his country.
12. The men whom we saw, were not Gauls.
13. The prince whose father is dying, weeps.
14. The prisoners that we saw, have been slain.
15. Thy son was the boy that gained the prize.
16. I have seen the ghost of the man that I killed.
17. The duties which we shall undertake, are difficult.
18. He has done works which I have often praised.
19. The walls of the town which thou hast seen, are high.
20. The danger which we had escaped, was greater.

Talis, qualis. Tantus, quantus.

Tālīs, quālīs, such as, and *tantūs, quantūs, as great as*, follow the construction of the Relative and its Antecedent, *tālīs* and *tantūs* being antecedents to the Relatives *quālīs* and *quantūs* : *tālīs est quālīs fuit he is such as he was* ; *nōn*

est tantus quantum pütävëram *he is not so great as I had thought.*

Tõt, quõt, *so (or as) many as*, are similarly used, but are indeclinable.

Rule for Order of Words.—Adjectives of Number and Quantity and Demonstrative Pronouns *precede* the Verbs or Adjectives to which they belong.

5.

1. We are such as we have always been.
2. The bird was such as I had never seen.
3. Lions are not so-great as elephants are.
4. This house is not so-large as that.
5. This is not so-great a work as I had undertaken.
6. These works are such as he had said.
7. Thou givest a book such as I have.
8. As many horses as cows.
9. This is a dog such as we have never seen.
10. This bird is not so great as it seemed to be.
11. Sicily is not so large as Italy.
12. Cats are not so large as dogs.
13. Cows are not so large as elephants.
14. Give as-many flowers as ye have.
15. These dogs are as large as small horses.
16. We have not so-many swords as there are men.
17. I have never before seen so-many armed-men as now are-present.
18. I will bring as many comrades as I am (say *shall be*) able.

Miscellaneous Examples.

(EMBRACING IRREGULAR VERBS.)

Rule for Order of Words.—Adverbs (including *nōn*) and Oblique Cases *precede* the Verbs or Adjectives to which they belong. See also previous Rules of Order, Exx. 1, 3, 4, 5.

6.

1. The pious citizens love the gods.

2. Cato the Censor wrote many books.
3. Cato, the great-grandson of the Censor, killed himself.
4. Romulus, first king of the Romans, was building a town.
5. Rēmus, Rōmulus' brother, leapt-over the wall.
6. Empēdōclēs the philosopher flung himself into Etna, the Sicilian mountain.
7. Fires, a mighty evil, burst-forth out-of the summit of that mountain.
8. This is my house; that very beautiful [one] is my grandfather's.
9. This staff is mine, that dog mine.
10. There the shepherds feed their flocks, a pleasant duty (acc.).
11. O farmers, why do ye despise the blessings which the gods have given?
12. Him, cruel man and cowardly soldier, we all despise.
13. I read many books, my greatest delights.
14. Medea I see, the murderess of her own children.
15. This is the ghost of Agamemnon, chief of the Argivi.
16. Not all learned-men are wise; many are very foolish.
17. Ulixes' wife destroyed by-night the web which she had woven by-day.
18. Ulixes, being-a-most-powerful archer, killed all the suitors, an idle herd.
19. These-men were plundering the goods of the absent king.
20. That is the ghost of Elissa, the Carthaginian queen.
21. Æneas betrayed her love, having been commanded to do that.
22. Things-which glitter are not all golden.
23. I shall not altogether (say *all*) die, but shall fly through the air, a swan.
24. I love honest suppliants, but you, the murderer of my son, I shall never love.

25. They were writing rapidly, but it was difficult to read what (pl.) they had written.
26. He will be able to bring two slaves.
27. Be-unwilling to lose thy labour.
28. They were able because (*quod*) they wished to be able.
29. Thou preferrest to walk, we prefer to go in a litter.
30. We saw many ploughmen ploughing with-ploughs.
31. The messengers found him going into the fields.
32. Of his daughters this-one is beautiful, but that-one is more beautiful.
33. Thou hast given a sad example, and sadder will follow.
34. The king had two daughters, beautiful but unlike.
35. Thou art going-away, my son, but thou wilt find thy labour most difficult.
36. I shall not perish, father; thou wilt see me returning.
37. Many women had come, but few went-away.
38. Horatius, having as-comrades two very brave men, protected the bridge.
39. The consul and the citizens cut-down the bridge with-axes.
40. Then his comrades fled, and Horatius was left alone.
41. The enemy (pl.) raise a great shout, but remain standing in their place.
42. Then the bridge, having been cut-away by-the-axes, falls.
43. The Tiber, a swift stream, carries-away the fragments to (use prep.) the sea.
44. Then the enemy (pl.) rejoice because they see the bridge broken.
45. Horatius is unable to fly by-the-bridge, therefore he leaps into the river.
46. He had not laid-down his arms, but nevertheless he was able to swim.
47. The Romans joyful receive him returning out-of so-great danger.

48. They gave to Horatius many acres of land, and often used to relate his glorious deeds.
49. Never have we heard poets relating more splendid doings.
50. O boys and girls, ye will often rejoice, singing-of this brave man.

Composite Agreement.

There are two alternatives.

A. The Adjective or Verb may agree with *the nearest Noun*, and be understood with the others : *ĕt vīr bōnūs est ĕt mūliēr, both the-man and the-woman are good.*

B. The Adjective or Verb may agree with *both Nouns taken together*. Then the rules are as follows :

The NUMBER is always Plural.

GENDER.—Nouns denoting **Persons**—

(a) If of the *Same* Gender, have their Adjective in that Gender : *Brūtūs ĕt Cassiūs mortūi sunt Brutus and Cassius are dead.*

(b) If of *Different* Genders, they have their Adjective in the *Masculine* : *vīr ĕt mūliēr bōni sunt the-man and the-woman are good.*

Nouns denoting **Things**—

(a) If of the *Same* Gender, sometimes have their Adjective in that Gender : *ulmūs ĕt quercūs nātūrā prōcērae sunt the-elm and the-oak are tall by-nature.*

But the Adjective is often put into the *Neuter* : *stūltitiā et timīditās fūgiendā sunt folly and cowardice are (things) to-be-shunned.*

(b) If of *Different* Genders, have their Adjective in the *Neuter* : *lābōr vōluptāsque dissimillimā sunt toil and pleasure are most-unlike (things).*

N.B.—In English politeness prompts us to say, *You and*

I, he and I, &c. ; but in Latin the speaker mentions himself first, saying, ego et Cæsār for Caesar and I.

7.

1. Both Balbus and I lifted-up our-hands.
2. The mother and the children have perished.
3. Are thou and thy brother sons of the same mother?
4. Both the men and the ship were destroyed.
5. This climate and this city are dear to me.
6. Thou and I are Romans.
7. Thou and he came to me.
8. Valour and fear are contrary to one another (*say between themselves*).
9. War and murder and sudden death are to-be-dreaded.
10. Caesar and I fought in Thessaly.
11. Thou and Pompey were conquered.
12. The sky and the sun are sweet.
13. Thou and I will teach.
14. Valour and fear are contrary.
15. Both the city and the camp were taken.
16. Thou and he had not come.
17. Both he and I were delighted.
18. Fear and avarice are unworthy.
19. Both the boys and the girls are beautiful.
20. The father and mother are dead.
21. Both the breezes are pleasant and the sun's heat.
22. Both the grain has been eaten and the oxen which we had.

THE CASES.

Accusative of Extent.

Extent of Space.—The Accusative is used of the extent of *space* through which anything moves or extends: *multā miliā passūm prōgrēssi sunt* *they advanced many thousands of paces* (i.e., miles).

Extent of Time.—The Accusative is used by a metaphor

of the length of *time throughout which* an action goes on :
bēstiōlāe quaedam ūnum diēm vivunt certain little creatures
live (only) one day.

8.

1. The elephant is said to live many years.
2. This animal will not live one day.
3. The town is-distant 18 miles.
4. Athens was then distant a journey of two days
5. This city has lasted 2,500 years.
6. Nobody will be able to jump 30 feet.
7. He has been dead now (*iam*) 20 years.
8. The wall which he built was 200 feet long and (*autem*)
 4 feet broad.
9. He began to learn the Greek language [when] 80 years
 old.
10. Crows and stags are said to live more than a hundred
 • years.
11. He is-wont to run a mile daily.
12. I am dwelling in this city now for the ninth year.
13. The soldiers marched 18 miles.
14. These tables are 2 feet high.
15. I remained at home 19 hours.
16. They dug a ditch 21 feet broad.
17. The Queen has already reigned 51 years.

Accusative of Sphere of Action.

The Accusative is also used to show the *extent* or *sphere*
of an action or state.

(a) A *Neuter* Adjective or Pronoun : *vālērē to-have-power*; *multum vālērē to have much power, to be very powerful*; *hōc fallōr I am mistaken in-this.*

(b) A Noun of same meaning as the Verb, *with an Adjective or other defining word* : *lūdum insōlentem lūdērē to play an arrogant game.* This is called the **Cognate Accusative**.

9.

1. We will warn him of this.
2. He has more power than I (have).
3. Thou servest a harder servitude.
4. They grieve very much (use *permultūs*).
5. We are moved less by this thing.
6. They will rejoice greatly at that.
7. In that I agree with the consul.
8. We had fought harder battles [when] young-men.
9. I have often been warned of these things.
10. This water has not the same taste.
11. We were deceived-about this thing.
12. He set out on a very long journey to-day.
13. She had taken (use *sālīō*) a very courageous leap.
14. They wish to play neither this game nor that.
15. These men have run longer courses; but those [men]
more-difficult-ones.
16. We shall dine on vegetables.
17. I boast-of the same-thing which ye boast-of.
18. I rejoice-about both victories.
19. We are angry-about another-thing.
20. It is-becoming to be-angry-about such-things.

Accusative of Motion towards a Place.

Only of names of Towns and Small Islands; also *dōmum* *home* *rūs* *to-the-country*, *fōrās* *out-of-doors*. *Corcȳram* *nāvi-gāvimūs* *we sailed to-Corcȳra*. With other words a Preposition is required.

The Accusative is used after the following Prepositions:

antē, āpūd, ād, adversūs,
cīs, clam, circum, ōb, sēcundum,
pōnē, pēnēs, prōpē, pēr,
post, trāns, and *all in -ā and -tēr*.
To these, if motion you intend,
sūb, sūpēr, in, you should append.

N.B.—*Sūpēr* is often used with Acc. where *extent without motion* is implied.

Rule for Order of Words.—Prepositions *precede* their Case.

10.

1. Regulushaving set-outfrom-the-city, returned to Carthage.
2. He carried the corpse into the senate-house.
3. Many set-out, few returned home.
4. To sail to Corinthus is a pleasant voyage.
- 5 Caesar with many ships crossed-over to Britain.
6. They fled shouting to the town.
7. First go out-of-doors into the street, then run quickly home.
8. We are making a journey to Athens with four friends.
9. We shall arrive at Brundisium in-two-days (abl.), whence we shall sail to Dyrrachium.
10. Go thou to the temple ; I will go to the forum.
11. He has gone away very-lately into the fields.
12. In-spring it is sweet to go into the country.
13. How pleasant it is to go through the sea in a ship !
14. Before the temple many statues of the gods were standing.
15. They will go to Carthage against the enemy (pl.), whom they will drive into the town.
16. That general, a very brave man, is in-the-power-of cruel foes.
17. A ditch ten feet broad had been carried round the city.
18. Cloelia, a very brave maiden, swam-across the Tiber by-night.
19. He ran-up, examining the walls, against which he attempted to set-up a ladder.
20. Marius' brother was brought to Catulus' tomb, and was tortured there.
21. Antonius having been conquered, fled to Alexandria to Cleopatra's palace.
22. We were standing before the house, but they were going to the forum.

23. The dogs were barking round the boar, which the hunter was attempting to kill.
24. The forces of the consul, having advanced beyond the mountains, will wait-for us.
25. A great number of barbarians were shouting outside the city, which they were not able to capture.
26. The birds flew over the trees, for a cat was lurking under the branches.
27. Run-up under the walls, and there place the ladders.

Accusative with Prepositions.

For List see Previous Exercise.

II.

1. Among the barbarians we found many cruel customs.
2. Let us place the camp on this side of the river.
3. We were not able to sail on account of the winter storms.
4. He was standing behind the tree near the sheep fold.
5. The Romans do not bury the dead within the walls of the city.
6. We slept through the night across the river.
7. He married a wife without-the-knowledge-of his father.
8. All-things are in-the-power-of the king.
9. I sat below Marcus, above whom sat Horatius.
10. Yesterday we were dining at-the-house-of Vergilius.
11. These nations now dwell on-this-side-of the Rhine, who formerly dwelt across the river.
12. His chariot was overturned near the goal.
13. He said many things at-the-house-of (prep.) Brutus against the dictator.
14. Nine-times he chased him round the walls.
15. The king sees nothing; darkness is before (*ob*) his eyes.
16. We saw the king's ghost walking before our eyes.

17. We had dined at-the-house-of (prep.) my father.
18. You will find the verse in (*žpřid*) Vergil, in (*žn*) the *Æneid*.
19. I have found a similar verse in Lucrētius, in his poem *De Rerum Natura*.
20. The same words are read in Stātius, in his *Achilleis*.

Accusative with Verbs compounded with Prepositions.

Verbs may take the Acc. because they are compounded with Prepositions which take the Acc.

So (*a*) *Intransitive Verbs*: *ždŏriri* *hostēs* to rise against (to attack) the enemy; *incřepāřě* cry out against; *sŭbirě* go under or undergo, &c.

(*b*) *Transitive Verbs* (with Acc. of Direct Object also): so especially compounds of *trāns*: *Caesār militēs amnem trānsportāt* Caesar carries his troops across the river. So *žnimum advertěřě* (also *žnimadvertěřě*): *žnimum adverti hŏmīnem* I turned my mind to the man (I observed the man).

12.

1. Our soldiers were attacking the enemy.
2. It is necessary to undergo punishment, for thou hast transgressed the law.
3. The consul ordered the centurions to lead across the river all the forces.
4. He surrounded the camp with a very broad trench.
5. In this game that boy surpasses all his schoolfellows.
6. He was amazed-at the fish which the fisherman had brought to the palace.
7. All perceived the man's shameless flattery.
8. We are hastening-to the law-court, for the praetor has taken-his-seat already.
9. The consul ordered the captain to lead the soldiers through the enemy's territory by-night.
0. After many wanderings the Greeks at length arrived-at the sea.

11. We shall be able to sail-round the island in three days.
12. Why didst thou not address the consul?
13. Gaius, Marcus, and Balbus have entered into a partnership.
14. We are being beset by all his forces.
15. Pompey *led* them *round* his camp.
16. The storm *carried* the ship *beyond* the port.

Double Accusative.

Some Verbs take two Accusatives, one of the person and one of the thing : as *hōc tē rōgō I ask you this.*

Two Accusatives may go
after cēlō, dōcēō,
ōrō, pōscō, flāgītō,
rōgō, and interrōgō.

The Accusative of the thing is often kept in the Passive :
sententiās interrogāmūr we are asked our opinion.

13.

1. The ambassadors will ask Caesar for pardon.
2. The guide, a treacherous man, concealed the danger from the army.
3. They were praying the king for help, from whom nevertheless they were concealing their treachery.
4. They had never themselves been taught grammar, and therefore were not able to teach others.
5. The senators having been asked their opinion, demanded from the emperor (*princeps*) the punishment of the guilty-men.
6. This crime has been concealed-from the magistrates.
7. Be-unwilling to conceal the truth from thy father.
8. Those who are taught many-things do not learn much.
9. Thou who askest me for pardon, hast formerly taught me mercy.
10. Thou askest me for nothing (thou sayest) ; therefore I, who refuse, refuse thee (dat.) nothing.

11. We importune the gods for things-harmful.
12. The maiden asked them for those things which the soldiers were carrying on their left arms.
13. Thou hast asked us for our shields, they say.
14. Thus the Romans teach their children loyalty.
15. Thou hast been asked for thy opinion. Answer.

Accusative with the Infinitive.

The Subject of a Verb in the Infinitive, if expressed, is put in the Accusative : *nūntiātūr Gallōs ādessē it-is-announced that the Gauls are-at-hand.*

INFINITIVE IN DEPENDENT STATEMENT.

After Verbs and Phrases of *saying, thinking, and feeling*, the Infinitive with the Acc. is used instead of a Dependent clause : *nūntiāt Caesārem rēdlissē he reports that Caesar has returned* ; *sēnsi prōcellam advēnirē I perceived that a storm was approaching* ; *sūēs vōlārē incrēdibīlē est it is incredible that pigs should fly.*

The Tenses of the Infinitive must be used with care.

The *Present Infinitive* expresses an action of the same time as the leading Verb, as : *dicō tē errārē I SAY that you ARE wrong* ; *dixi tē errārē I SAID that you WERE wrong* : *I said errās.*

The *Perfect Infinitive* expresses an action of a time prior to the leading Verb, as : *dicō tē errāssē I say that you HAVE BEEN wrong (or WERE wrong)* ; *dixi tē errāssē I said that you HAD BEEN wrong* : *I said errāvisti (or errābās).*

There is no Imperf. Inf. in Latin : the Perf. Inf. is used to represent it, and also does duty for a Pluperf. Inf.

14.

1. That thou hast won (inf.) is to me most-pleasing.
- 2 The messenger says that the soldiers are-returning.
- 3 We had heard that the army had been conquered.
- 4 The people cry-out that the man is falling to the earth

5. It-is-plain (*cōnstāt*) that he is the friend of traitors.
6. The general believes that the legion has set-out already.
7. The flatterer said that the fish wished to be caught and to be given to the emperor.
8. We perceived that we had been deceived.
9. Who denies that the law has been passed?
10. He writes to (*ad*) me that the consul has returned to-day.
11. I shall never believe that a man really brave fears death.
12. It has been reported that the bridge has been broken already.
13. We heard that the poet Martiālis was born of a Spanish father.
14. I perceived that my brother had not been buried.
15. Art-thou-ignorant that the king forbade this thing?
16. I heard that he was then dying.
17. I saw that she was weeping.

The Dative.

Dative of Person Interested.—The person whose interests are involved in any action is put in the Dative, generally translated *for*: *bōnā omniā pōpūlō Rōmānō prēcantūr* they pray-for all blessings for the Roman people; *ipsī cōnsūli ūmērūm volnērātūm, filiō autem altērūm ōcūlūm ēffōssūm audiō.*

Dative of Person Judging.—*Mihī quīdem muliēr fōrmōsissimā* to me (in my judgment) a most lovely woman.

Dative of Person Possessing.—Generally with *essē* to be *est mihī frātēr* there-is a brother for-me, that is, *I have a brother.*

15.

1. Each-man takes-care for himself.
2. The temple is situated (perf.) on the right as you enter (say to those entering) the city.

3. That shepherd has (use *esse*) more flocks than I.
4. We have done for thee that which we were able to do.
5. The boys have (*esse*) both hoops and balls, with-which they play.
6. They relate that the boy's (dat.) head blazed with flames.
7. It is true that *we have* two country-houses.
8. They indeed have a large multitude of soldiers, but we have a most just cause.
9. The city of (say *for*) these wretched-men has been plundered and their houses have been burned
10. Thou wilt die for thyself indeed happily, but for me a great misfortune.
11. I have two friends whose (dat.) father and mother have died very-recently.
12. The old-man's (dat.) right foot feels-pain (*dolēre*), but the other has recovered.
13. I hear that the boy's collar-bone is broken.
14. The doctor writes that my wife's (dat.) eyes feel pain.
15. He has knocked-out my teeth and broken my slave's head.

Dative of Indirect Object.

The person whose interests are involved in any action is often the *Indirect Object* of the action.

This Dative is found with :

- (a) Transitive Verbs which take an Accusative of the Direct Object : *grātiās agit mihi he gives thanks to me.*
- (b) Intransitive Verbs, Adjectives, and Adverbs : *nōcent aliis they are-harmful to-others, amicūs tibi friendly to-you, congruētē nātūrae agreeably to nature.*

The English has only one oblique case, the Objective ; and this is used to translate both the Latin Dative and Accusative ; thus in *I give him it*, we must put *him* in the Dat. in Latin, and *it* in the Acc.

Hence many Verbs which seem to be Transitive when translated into English are really Intransitive, and take a Dative : *pārēō tibi I-obey you*, lit. *I-am-obedient to-you*.

The following lines should be learned by heart •

*Command, obey, oppose, or aid,
Spare, threaten, pardon, and persuade,
Take Datives. Add give, tell, and show,
Please, envy, harm, displease, and owe,
Heal, counsel, nūbō, stūdēō,
Yield, trust, permit, indulgēō.*



But mark, **Accusatives** must go
With *laedō, sālō, iūbēō,*
Dēlectō, sīnō, and iūvō.

16.

1. Give me the book.
2. Thou hast rightly returned thanks to the gods, the authors of thy victory.
3. The father is unwilling to pardon his guilty son.
4. That wickedness of-yours (*istē*) has injured you alone.
5. Calpurnia married Caesar, and Augustus married Livia.
6. Nobody shall persuade me that thou art (inf.) base.
7. The scouts reported to the general all the plans of the enemy.
8. Tell her what (pl.) I tell to thee.
9. The wise man said that he who spares the wicked, spares not the good.
10. Let the punishment be equal to the offence.
11. Many animals are very like human-beings, and some human beings are like wild-beasts.
12. Those who obey the laws of God live most agreeably also to the laws of nature.
13. Be unwilling to envy the rich (pl.), but rather envy the good.
14. Flatterers delight not the truly great (pl.).

15. If Fābius shall succour us, we shall be able to help (ižvō) the other consul.
16. His rashness injured our cause much.
17. The auxiliaries helped our men bravely.
18. Envy thou the good ; study virtue.
19. The tribunes angrily (adj.) opposed the bill.
20. It is sometimes wise to be-indulgent to faults, and to pardon the guilty.

Dative with Verbs compounded with a Preposition.

Most Verbs compounded with a Preposition take a Dative of the *Indirect Object* : āmicis dēfūit *he failed (was lacking to) his friends* ; cāpīti subdūxērāt ēnsem *she had removed the sword from my head* ; cōnstāt sībī *he agrees with himself (he is consistent)*.

Such Verbs are those compounded with the following :

ād, antě, cōn, ĩn, intěr, dē,
sūb, sūpěr, ōb, prae, post, and řě.

17.

1. Snatch the dagger from him.
2. The father survived the son many years.
3. I will endeavour to be present at the spectacle.
4. Arms indeed they have taken away from us.
5. Do they believe that courage fails us ?
6. Nothing was able to withstand the fury of our-men.
7. We placed-in-the-way of the enemy trees and stones.
8. Withstand the beginnings of evil things.
9. Let us bring the ship to shore.
10. He set Labiēnus over the other (*altěr*) army.
11. The giants attempted to place this mountain on that.
12. Thou hast helped many unhappy-men.
13. Never will I fail my fatherland.
14. The rose surpasses all other flowers.
15. He-is-over the treasury.

Dative of Use or Purpose Served.

1. The Dative of Verbal Nouns used to express the results aimed at : *signum receptū the signal for retreat.*

2. *Predicative Dative.*—The Dative of Abstract Nouns is used as a Predicate, generally with *essē*; a Dative of the Person being usually added : *exitio est avidum mare nautis the greedy sea is destructive (lit., for a destruction) to sailors ; curae sunt atque labori they cause care and toil.*

18.

1. Keep thou the ring as-a-pledge.
2. They gave me the book as-a-gift.
3. Go thou away : the defence of the town shall be a care to me.
4. To whom was the man's murder (say *the man murdered*) a gain ?
5. The destruction of the house was a very great loss to me.
6. To learn much rather than many things is a profit to a boy.
7. Avarice is the source and origin of many other vices.
8. The warm sun is a delight to old men.
9. The death of Hector (*Hector dead*) was a grief to the Trojans, but a delight to the Achivi.
10. On all sides they were sounding (*cānō*) signals for retreat.
11. The floods are a very great loss to farmers.
12. The goose is a [cause of] damage to the crop.
13. The ant is an example of useless labour.
14. She will no longer be a pattern for boys.
15. This will be a reproach to her for ever.

THE GENITIVE.

The Genitive with Nouns.

Connexion in General.—*Quaestio sapientiae an inquiry about-wisdom ; requies laborum rest from toil.*

Possession.—Caesaris hortī *Caesar's gardens.*

Origin and Cause.—Lābōr discendi *the toil of learning,*
sēmēn belli *the seed of the war* (from which the war *sprang*).

Partition.—Britannōrum fortissimī *the-bravest-of-the Britons,* nīhil nōvī *no news* (*nothing of news*).

Definition.—The Genitive showing in what a thing consists: hōnōs cōsūlātūs *the office of-consul* (lit. *of-consulship*).

Description.—Always with an Adjective accompanying: rēs māgnī lābōrīs *an affair of-great labour.*

The Gen. of *Possession* is used with *essē* as a Predicate to the Inf.: paupēris est nūmērārē pēcūs *it is the work of a poor man to count his flock.*

19.

1. The competition for [public] offices profits the state much.
2. We have heard that Caesar was a man of the highest talent in military matters.
3. He was considered to be also a man of very great courage.
4. The word 'virtue' has many meanings.
5. Balbus built a wall of 60 feet in height (acc.) and of very great solidity.
6. If anything unfortunate shall have happened.
7. The consul coveted the office of the dictatorship.
8. They relate that Antonius was a man of wonderful eloquence.
9. I say that sleep is a rest from cares.
10. In the same way we believe that death is an escape from cares.
11. Soldiers wear corslets as-a-protection against missiles.
12. In one night the man, of so great speed was he, accomplished a two-days' journey.

13. All reckon that he is of the-highest authority in the senate-house.
14. To subdue greediness after gain, that-thing itself will be a gain to thee.
15. He believes that pleasure is nothing except (*nīsi*) a release from pain.
16. It is [a mark] of folly to despise the praise of good-men.
17. It is [a characteristic] of all men to press towards (*ād*) things-forbidden.
18. It is the whetstone's [work] to sharpen iron.

The Genitive with Verbs.

Certain Verbs, chiefly Transitive, take a Complement in the Genitive.

Genitive of the Charge.—Verbs of *Accusing, Convicting,* and *Acquitting* take a *Genitive of the Charge*: *ambitūs accūsārē to-accuse of-bribery.*

Genitive of the Mental Object.—Certain Verbs which denote *pity, vexation, shame, disgust* take a Genitive of the Object of the Feeling. These are *mīserēri* and the Impersonals:

pigēt, pūdēt, paenitēt,
taedēt, atque mīserēt :

mīserērē tūōrum pity your-friends, pūdēt mē frātrīs I-am-ashamed of-my-brother.

Some Verbs of *Remembering, Forgetting,* etc., take a Genitive of the *thing remembered,* etc.; so *admōnērē to remind,* *certiōrem faciērē to inform*: *vivōrum mēmīni I-remember the-living, certiōrem mē cōsili fēcīt he informed me of his plan.*

Rēcordōr always, and *mēmīni, rēmīniscōr, obliviscōr* often, take an Acc.

The Gen. of Possession is found with *rēfert it concerns,* *intērest it makes a difference.* In place of the Gen. of the

Personal Pronouns, the Possessives are used. They are put into the *Abl. Fem.*; *mēā, tūā, sūā*, etc.: *nūlliūs māgīs intērest quam tūā mē saluum essē to no one does it make more difference than to you that I should be safe; multum hōc nostrā rēfert this concerns us much.*

20.

1. Gaius has told me that the consul has been accused of treachery.
2. He has been acquitted of treason, but has been convicted of embezzlement.
3. The defendant is-ashamed-of his baseness.
4. Who is not weary of marches and watches and fights?
5. The deserters informed Caesar of Afranius' plans.
6. It is to the interest of the state that we set-out (inf.) to-day.
7. He who forgets living friends does not easily remember dead-ones.
8. It is to our interest to acquit him of the capital-charge.
9. O blind king, pity me, who am blind equally as (*āc*) thou [*art*].
10. I remember the tune (acc.), but I have forgotten the words.
11. If thou pitiest others, why dost thou not pity me?
12. Dido said that she (*sē*) was weary-of marriage-torches.
13. To whose interest is it that I [*should*] die (inf.)?
14. I do not deny that I repent-of the crime.
15. Remind thy brother of my candidature.
16. O thou who pitiest all, pity also us, most-miserable men.

The Genitive with Adjectives.

Genitive with Adjectives.—The Genitive is found with many Adjectives, especially (*a*) Active Participles used

adjectivally, and other adjectives containing a Verbal Notion.

Appētētissimūs hōnestātis	<i>Most eager for virtue.</i>
Cūpidūs contentiōnis	<i>Longing for contention.</i>
Mēns cōnsciā rēcti	<i>A mind conscious of right.</i>

(b) Adjectives denoting *fulness, want, participation* or *ownership, remembering, forgetting, power, powerlessness, guilt, innocence.*

Plēnissimūs pisciū	<i>Very full of fish.</i>
Rātiōnis expers	<i>Destitute of reason.</i>
Virōrum prōpriū	<i>Belonging (peculiar) to men.</i>

21.

1. The consul, destitute of a plan, was easily conquered.
2. It is not peculiar to human-beings alone to feel-pain and to feel-joy.
3. No animal is devoid of these feelings.
4. At length we came into a garden where was a lake full of fishes of-all-kinds.
5. I shall not condemn men covetous of glory.
6. Be mindful of those things which thy father told thee.
7. He-who is powerless-over himself governs others badly.
8. It is disgraceful to condemn a man innocent of the charge.
9. We have seized this man (being) implicated in the crime.
10. The dog, greedy-after the shadow, let-go the meat which he was carrying.
11. Thou hast obtained a friend most devoted to thee.
12. He wandered through the land beggared of all things.
13. Loyal to their general and eager for-the fray, the soldiers rushed into battle.

THE ABLATIVE.

The Ablative Proper.

Motion from a Place.—Without a Preposition, only names of **Towns** and **Small Islands** and **rūrē, dōmō**:
fūgīt Cōrīnthō *he fled from-Corinth*, rūrē advēniō *I arrive from-the-country*.

With other words a Preposition must be used; as, ex
Asiā *from Asia*.

Origin.—Iōvē prōgnātūs *descended from-Jupiter*.

Agent.—The Ablative with **āb** or **ā** is used with Passive Verbs of the Agent by whom something is done: laudāmur āb his, culpāmūr āb illis *we are praised by these, we are blamed by those*.

Abl. of Separation.—With Verbs signifying *Removing, Depriving*, etc., especially when compounded with the Prepositions **āb** and **dē**, **ex** and **sē**: pellērē cāstris *to drive from-the-camp*, armis spōliārē *to strip of-his-armour*, urbē exirē *to-go-out of-the-town*.

Abl. of Comparison.—After Comparative Adjectives and Adverbs: quid māgis est saxō dūrum, quid molliūs undā? *what is more hard than stone, what softer than water?*

22.

1. Rēgulus, that most resolute man, was unwilling to return from Carthage disgraced.
2. Thou indeed art descended not from a goddess, but from wolves and tigers.
3. Thou remainest harder than rocks, nor yieldest to my prayers.
4. Ajax related that his father was born of a son of Jove.
5. Caesar was killed by Brutus and the other conspirators.
6. What is stronger than a lion, what[is] sweeter than honey?
7. They have robbed me of my arms and my kingdom, they have bereft me of my wife and children.
8. I shall never paint a picture more beautiful than thine.

9. Rarely is found a tree more fruitful in berries than the mountain-ash.
10. The chieftain now (*iam*) angry, knocked the helmsman off the ship into the water.
11. He has already returned from the country, but has not-yet gone-away home.
12. Having departed from Italy, we sailed rapidly home to Athens.
13. No flower is more beautiful than the rose.
14. Many of the ancients declared that their race was born of Jove.
15. No animals are stronger than the lion and elephant.
16. Nevertheless, even the strongest of these are tamed by men.
17. Many of the fugitives were killed by their-own-friends.
18. Who is more false than Paris, who robbed Měnělāūs of Hělēnā, his wife?
19. It is certain that nothing is more loveable than virtue.
20. He was found by his friends on the Appian Road, killed and stripped of his clothes.
21. The message was carried from Marathon to Athens by Pheidippides, the famous runner.
22. He reported that the Persians had fled, routed by the Greeks.
23. Sarpēdōn, though born of Jove, nevertheless perished in the Trojan war, killed by Pātroclus.
24. The wall built by Rōmūlūs was despised by Rēmūs, his brother.
25. Venus complained that her (*sibi*) hand had been wounded by Dīōmēdēs, a mortal.

The Instrumental Ablatives.

Ablative of Instrument.—*āpri dentibus sē tūtantūr boars defend themselves with-their-tusks.*

Per with the Acc. is used for the *means* by which anything is done :

për dolum *by craft*, për nūntium certior factus *informed by means of a messenger*.

Ablative of Cause.—maerorē cōnsēnēscēbāt *he-was-growing-old with-grief*.

Ablative of Cost.—praesenti pecūniā venīrē *to-be-sold for ready money*.

Ablative of Amount of Difference.—sōl multis partibūs māiōr est quam lūnā *the-sun is many times larger than the-moon*.

Ablative of Way or Manner.—pollicēor hōc vōbīs bonā fidē *I promise this to-you in good faith*. Unless there is an Adjective agreeing with the Abl., cum is generally used.

Ablative of Quality or Description.—Always with an Adjective or Pronoun: summā virtūtē adūlescēns *a youth of the highest virtue*.

Ablative of Attendant Circumstances, or Abl. Absolute.—Chāōniae fugiunt, āquilā venientē, cōlumbae *the Chaonian doves flee when the eagle comes, or at the coming of the eagle*.

Additional Exercises on the Ablative Absolute will be found in the next Section.

23.

1. The barbarians had armed themselves (*se*) with sword, shield, and spear.
2. He died either of fever or poison.
3. This tree is twenty feet taller than that one.
4. I know that he was a boy of very great promise (*say hope*).
5. The conspirators rushed-in while the queen was supping (*abl. abs.*).
6. They killed the secretary, a young-man of many accomplishments, with their daggers.
7. The young-man being dead, the queen wept, and swore that she would avenge him.
8. Thee we will sing as the day arrives.

9. What I had bought for twenty *denarii*, I sold for an *as*.
10. If *thou* art-unwilling (abl. abs.) to help, *I* at least will never desert a cause of so-great glory (gen.).
11. The rest now (*iam*) giving-way, the *triārii*, veterans of great resoluteness, restored our men's (dat.) courage.
12. The rider having slipped-off, the horse, freed from control, fled-away.
13. This victory cost the king (dat.) both much gold and the blood of a thousand soldiers.
14. While thou art grieving, I am unable to rejoice.
15. With so energetic and experienced a general, why do we fear?
16. We shall welcome with much honour an orator of so great eloquence.
17. That which is sold everywhere at a very small price, why dost thou buy for a hundred *asses*?
18. That egg is half the size of this (say *less by a half*).
19. This elm is many feet taller than that.
20. Demosthenes and Cicero were orators of the highest eloquence.
21. Homer relates that Achilles was killed by Paris with a poisoned arrow.
22. Having set-out from home in the evening, accompanied by one slave, he was killed by a brigand with a dagger.
23. Who knows-not that Agamemnon, king of the Argives, was killed with an axe by Clÿtaemnestra, his own wife, having been first (*prîus*) entangled in a robe?
24. It-is-clear that no fires were commanded by Agamemnon, but that the fire seen by the watchman had been kindled by the conspirators, by order of Clÿtaemnestra and Aegisthus.
25. The old-men, even [though] warned by Cassandra, nevertheless did not succour the king, being seized with panic.

26. Why hast thou sold the hinges at half (of) the price?
 27. He is a youth of unusual talent, but destitute of industry.
 28. At how much are mattocks sold? At two denarii apiece (use *singŭlī* and a distributive numeral).
 29. It-is-agreed among all that his father-in-law was a man of consummate audacity.
 30. These things are not sold except (*nŭsŭ*) for ready money.

Ablative Absolute (additional).

The Latin Ablative Absolute can be used to represent English sentences of very various forms, as the following examples show. Observe that the addition of a participle is not always necessary.

Urbē captā rēdit	<i>The city being taken</i> <i>After the city was taken</i> <i>Having taken the city</i> <i>When he had taken the city</i> <i>After taking the city</i> <i>After the taking of the city,</i>	he returned,
Cāninŭ cōnsulē	or, he took the city, and returned.	
Mē iudicē falsŭ ēs	{ In the consulship of Caninius. In my opinion you are mis- taken.	
Nōn lōcō castris captō nēc auspicātō nēc litātō, in- struunt āciēm	{ Without choosing a place for the camp, or taking-the- auspices, or offering-a-fa- vorable-sacrifice, they drew up their army.	
Virtūtēs iacent vōluptatē dō- mīnantē	{ The virtues lie prostrate if pleasure is mistress.	
Pātrē vivō	{ While my father lived.	

The version of each of the sentences, Nos. 1—20, should contain an Ablative Absolute.

Part of
paralysed (I
Time at
the Ides of
Time with
venit for me

1. Fear sei
the w
 2. Who can
 3. I will pa
 4. He was
 5. I saw M
died.
 6. We roa
summ
 7. This ten
 8. The shi
 9. He retur
 10. The fast
hour.
 11. It is [the
 12. Cromuel
Septem
 13. Infirm oft
 14. Within 1
Athen
 15. In three
the Pi
 16. Has he 1
montl
 17. He was 1
 18. The caver
 19. This corn
- ad out the soldiers when favourable-
yet been offered?
saying these-things, Cătilina went-out
use.
things, depart immediately.
en-drawn, the consuls go-away to their
own risk.
we are able to hope for all-things.
had at-length been repaired, Caesar
across the river.
gment the bird was a crow.
lo nothing if you refuse.
ay, the mice do play.
perish with so unhealthy a climate.
ured the town, he butchered the in-
bear these things in the consulship
ured the chicken, the fox escaped.
profits, it is [a mark] of folly to be-wise.
- (B).
- ute is not to be used when the noun
n has already another construction.
saw the city while it was burning
flagrantem (not flăgrantă că), because

city, to which *it* refers, is already constructed in the Accusative. Similarly, *Having captured the city, the consul burned it* becomes *urbem captam cōnsul incendit* (not *urbē captā cōnsul ēam incendit*) ; *I gave the book to him when he was a youth* *ādūlēscenti* (not *ādūlēscentē*) *ēi librum dēdi* ; *Having done his duty, the consul resigned his office* *fūctūs officiō cōnsul māgistrātū sē abdīcāvīt* (not *fūctō*).

The following examples illustrate both kinds of construction.

21. Having died, the man was expensively buried.
22. Caesar halted since he had obtained a place suitable for a camp.
23. Having captured the city, the army returned to Rome.
24. Having flung his javelin, let the *fētīālīs* depart.
25. Though Bibulus also was consul, the consuls were said (impf.) to be Julius and Caesar.
26. If you ask nothing, I deny you (dat.) nothing.
27. If born of the lowest class, how has he attained to the consulship ?
28. While thou art idling, we are longing to depart.
29. Antōnius said that Caesar's wounds spoke even (*ētiā*) though he was dead.
30. If he is innocent, why do you oppose him ?
31. With head bare and sword drawn he rushed into the battle.

Locative Ablative.

The Ablative is used to denote several meanings which originally belonged to the Locative.

Place where.—Except in a few phrases such as *terrā et mārī on land and sea*, only found with an epithet or Preposition : *mēdiō oppidō flūit it flows through the midst of the town*.

Route.—*portā Collinā urbem intrāvīt he entered the city by the Colline Gate*.

Part or Thing Concerned—capti auribūs et oculis paralysed (lit. seized) in ears and eyes.

Time at which anything happens.—Idibus Sextilibūs on the Ides of August. (See especially Ex. 87.)

Time within which.—Roscius multis annis Rōmam nōn vēnit for many years Roscius did not come to Rome.

25.

1. Fear seized the soldiers, and they wandered-about in the whole camp.
2. Who can run if he is lame of one foot?
3. I will pay thee the money on the Greek Kalends.
4. He was walking along the Tuscan street.
5. I saw Marcus within two-days after (*quō*) his (*zī*) father died.
6. We roam over the mountains both in winter and summer.
7. This temple had been vowed in the Latin war.
8. The ship was swallowed-up in mid sea.
9. He returned within two years.
10. The faster ships cross from England to France in one hour.
11. It is [the duty] of a senator to be present in his place.
12. Cromuelliū died on his own birthday, the 3rd of September.
13. Infirm of purpose, he is of no importance.
14. Within how-long a time shall ye be able to reach Athens?
15. In three days, for we shall sail by the direct [road] to the Piraeus.
16. Has he been at Rome within the last (say *these*) two months?
17. He was present at the procession on the Ides of July.
18. The cavalry were fighting on the left wing.
19. This corn has come from Holland by the Thames.

20. Death often comes quickly in a moment of time.
21. She was said to be most beautiful in appearance.
22. The descent is very easy, but few have been able to return by the same road.

Ablative with Verbs and Adjectives.

1. *With Deponent Verbs.*—Six uncompounded Deponent Verbs take the Ablative.

**fungōr, ūtōr, and frūōr,
vescōr, nītōr, pōtiōr.**

2. Verbs and Adjectives denoting *Want* or *Fulness* take the Abl. : pāne ēgēō *I-want bread*, hōnōrē plēnūs *full of honour*.

3. The following Adjectives also take the Ablative : **dignūs** *worthy (of)*, **indignūs** *unworthy (of)*, **contentūs** *contented (with)*, **frētūs** *relying (on)*, and **praeditūs** *endowed (with)*.

26.

1. Having performed his duties honourably, he resigned his magistracy.
2. Relying on these plans, he advanced to battle.
3. They say that in this land the inhabitants feed on beans.
4. I was intimate with his brother.
5. Robbed of his tail, the fox devised a crafty plan.
6. Using (perf. part.) all his cunning, he said that tails were a hindrance.
7. But he did not gain many votes.
8. Again the fox employed his cunning, desiring to feed-on the-cheese which the crow was holding.
9. It is better to enjoy things-acquired than to be eager for things-denied.
10. Now (*iam*) for many days I have been-(say *am*) in-want of all food.
11. [Though] worthy of imprisonment, he enjoys the emperor's friendship.

12. He saw as-it-were (*quasi*) a great sheet full of animals.
13. Conquerors gain-possession of the body, but they cannot subdue the spirit of courageous-men.
14. [If] contented with a little, thou wilt enjoy greatly the blessing of life.
15. The advantages which thou usest are the gifts of God.
16. It is very easy to capture a city stripped of its garrison.
17. Lacking both ships and men, we are not able to rely on the courage of our soldiers.
18. He said that she was a woman endowed with consummate genius.
19. I was always very intimate with her.
20. Having gained-possession of the house, they killed those whom they found sleeping there.

Opus and Usus.

Opus est *there is need*, lit. *there is work*, takes a Dat. of the *Person needing*. The construction of the *thing needed* is as follows :

Either (A) **opus** is the Predicate, and **what is needed the Subject** : *nōbis dux opus est a leader is what we want* (lit. *the work for us*) ; *glōriārī nōn opus est there is no need to boast* (*boasting is not the work*). Or

(B) **opus** is the Subject, and **what is needed is put in the Abl.** of the Instrument : *glādiō opus est there is need of the sword* (lit. *work to be done by the sword*).

So of *Actions* with the Perf. Part., especially the Neut. Part. used Impersonally, *prōpēratō opus est there is need of haste* (lit. *work to be done by hurrying*).

quid ? in what respect ? (Acc. of Extent) is often added : *quid opus est glādiō ? in what is there need of a sword ? quid opus est factō ? in what respect is there need of doing ? i.e., what ought to be done ?*

ūsūs est has the same sense and generally the same construction as **ōpūs est**, but is rare in Classical Prose.

N.B. — *Opūs* must be used in all the following sentences, and where possible the sentence should be turned with both constructions.

27.

1. What need is there of words? Let us do!
2. What is to be done? There is need of consultation.
3. They want a chief, we courage.
4. There is no need to be angry: speak calmly.
5. He wrote that the matter was urgent.
6. The Romans had no need of soldiers, but they wanted (*gēdō*) engines. The enemy needed courage.
7. What thou wastest thou wilt some day need.
8. We have relied on arms too-long (*comp.*), now (*iam*) we want the gown. Let arms yield to the gown.
9. What dost thou want? I want nothing.
10. The-man-who-sails (*part.*) on dangerous seas has need of caution and of courage.

Ablative with Prepositions.

The following Prepositions take the Ablative:

āb *or* ā, cum, cōram, dē,
 pālam, prōcūl, ex *or* ē,
 sīnē, sīmūl, prō *and* prae,
To these if rest at you intend,
 sūb, sūpēr, īn *you should append.*

The Ablative must be used even though *motion* is denoted, if the motion is *confined to a certain area*: ambūlābāt īn hortō *he was walking about (motion) in the garden*; sūb mōntīs rādīcībās discurrunt *they run about at the foot of the mountain*.

tēnūs *up to*, is generally constructed with the Ablative, but sometimes with the Gen.: prae can only be used in negative or *quasi-negative* sentences.

N.B. — Write mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nōbiscum, vōbiscum, instead of cum mē, &c.

28.

1. He was not able to speak for shame.
2. It is sweet to lie under a shady tree or to wander over the sunny hills.
3. He grows-old far-from his native-land.
4. Not without hope, but wanting all other things, he sailed over the seas.
5. These things must not be said in-the-presence-of the king.
6. We will escape from the prison without-the-knowledge of the jailor.
7. He says he will attempt the deed either with thee or with me.
8. Peace be with you.
9. The soldiers were immersed as-far-as the breast.
10. Formerly they used-to-run (impf.) at Crissa, under the hill.
11. The bird has been flying-round (use pres.) above the mountain now-for-a-long-time.
12. Be-unwilling to exult : not-yet hast thou escaped from the wood.
13. They fight fiercely for their wives and children.
14. He dares to lie in-the-presence-of his judges.
15. He was scarcely able to rise for pain.
16. Let him dwell at Brundisium with me or with thee.
17. She was scarcely able to look-at me for tears.
18. His beard hung-down (impf.) as-far-as his feet.
19. Many birds were flying-about in the king's garden.
20. Does he ride-round in the arena without his father's knowledge?

The True Locative.

Locative of the Place.—Used in names of *Towns* and *Small Islands*: Rōmae at Rome, Rhōdī in Rhodes, Karthāgīnī at Carthage; also hūmī, terrae on-the-ground, dōmī at home,

rūrī or **rūrē** *in-the-country*, **bellī** *in-war*, **militīae** *in-warfare*.

In a metaphorical sense we find **ānīmī**, as *aeger ānīmī sick at heart*.

The case-ending for the First declension is **-ae**, for the Second **-ī**, for the Third **-ī** or **-ē**. The Locative is only used in the Sing. ; in the **Plural** the **Abl.** is used instead.

Locative of Value.—The **Neuter of Adjectives denoting quantity**, and a few nouns expressing *worthlessness*, are put in the Locative: *parvī sunt fōrīs armā nīsi est cōnsilium dōmī arms are worth-little abroad unless there is wisdom at-home*.

A *Genitive of Price* is found in *plūris worth-more*, *mīnōris worth less*. It is due to the Locative forms in **-ī** being mistaken for Genitives.

N.B.—If the **Amount** is **exactly specified**, the **Ablative** must be used: *hōc sestertiō cārū est this is dear at a sesterce*.

29.

1. Pindar, the Greek poet, used to dwell (impf.) at Thebes.
2. There is another Thebes in Egypt; there ruins of mighty temples have been found lying on the ground.
3. Most-things are sold at a smaller price in the country.
4. Who values the liar even at a hair?
5. He was mourning at home sick at heart.
6. For how much dost thou sell a bushel of wheat?
7. At so much? Yes; the bushel sold for more yesterday.
8. To buy cheap and sell dear (say, *for little, for much*) is [the part] of the clever trader.
9. At Corinth they-used-to-make (impf.) very beautiful vases out-of bronze.
10. We value highly the man tenacious of his purpose.
11. In Cyprus, at Mycenae, and at Argos the remains of ancient cities have been dug-out.

12. At Olympia, in Western Greece, a statue of Mercūrius (whom the Greeks call Hermēs), made by Prāxitélēś, was found.
13. This most graceful work is now at Bērōlinum.
14. He died at Carthage. His brother also died in battle.
15. The army is now at Veii, which city they are besieging.
16. Two sparrows are dear at a dēnārius.
17. He prefers to dwell in the country, I at Athens.
18. I have at-home some very beautiful vessels which were found at Larnāca.

Comparison.

In Comparison of two things the *Comparative* of Adjective or Adverb is used. Then there are two alternatives :

- (1) *That with which anything is compared* is put in the same case as *the thing compared*, **quam** being used to show the comparison : mēliōr est certā pāx quam spērātā victōriā *certain peace is better than hoped-for victory.*
- (2) Instead of **quam** with a *Nominative* or *Accusative* (but no other case), the *Ablative* of Comparison may be used : quid molliūs undā ? *what (is) softer than water ?*

Where ambiguity would arise, only *quam* may be used : Brūtum nōn minūs amō quam tū, paenē dixi quam tē *I love Brutus no less than you do, I almost said than I do you.*

Plūs, ampliūs *more*, mīnūs *less*, are often used without **quam** : plūs dēcem pēdēs *more than ten feet.*

Where two qualities in the same person or thing are compared, the Adjectives (or Adverbs) which express them are often *both* put in the *Comparative* : cōtiō grātiōr quam vēriōr *a speech more pleasant than true* ; but also (as Eng.) • māgis grātā quam vērā.

30.

1. O conquerors, crueller than wolves and tigers.
2. The gods have not given a happier lot to thee than to me.
3. The kid is dearer to its (*sññs*) mother than thy son to thee.
4. What is stronger than a lion? What is sweeter than honey?
5. Not always is peace more desirable than honourable conflict.
6. Her (say to *her*) lips are more (*māgīs*) ruddy than the cherry, her teeth more white than milk.
7. Jewels are not dearer to the miser than sleep to the weary.
8. The eyesight of the eagle is keener than (that) of men.
9. The clang of arms is sweeter to the warrior than the songs of birds.
10. Treachery wins not more precious things than honesty.
11. Many stars which appear very small are in reality larger than the sun.
12. Women are much more tolerant of pain than men
13. He spake words true rather than agreeable.
14. His nature is more rash than courageous.
15. They love a music more wild than pleasant to our ears.
16. Behold a man cunning rather than wise.
17. I believe that he is forgetful rather than ungrateful.
18. He told a long story, rather strange than likely.
19. Thou wilt learn by-persevering (*gerund*) rather than by-guessing.
20. The inhabitants of that land live on food more wholesome than pleasant.
21. I love my country more than you (do).
22. We do not miss him more than (we miss) Marcus.
23. This philosopher is subtle rather than wise.
24. We praise Brutus less than Cassius (did).

Adjective for Adverb.

Adjectives are often used in Latin where English has Adverbs. This is always the case where the real reference is to some *state* or *condition* of a *person* or *thing*: *sciēns hōc fēci I did this knowingly* (*I was aware* what I did), *rem tātītūs praetērīs you pass over the matter silently*, i.e., *saying nothing about it*.

The Adverb, however, must be used if the *Manner* is referred to: *cautē faciēre to act cautiously, in a cautious manner, tātītē exēcrārī to curse silently*, i.e., *not aloud*.

31.

1. He killed his own father unwittingly.
2. He went out of the house in-a-rage.
3. Never shall I have deceived thee knowingly.
4. Having approached cautiously, he struck him unexpectedly (adj.).
5. I wrote unwillingly that-which I grieve to have written.
6. Why hast thou returned home so late?
7. The soldiers press-on furiously, butchering the fugitives (participle) on-all-sides.
8. I will encourage him gently; perhaps he will listen not unwillingly.
9. He is totally overwhelmed with debt.
10. Having been waked early, we set-out cheerfully towards the mountain.
11. The foot-pad attacked me unawares (adj.).
12. What I had (impf.) I willingly gave.
13. He gives twice who gives quickly.
14. Hearing this Curio, a cunning man, at-once gaily (adj.) offered half of his debt.
15. I came first (i.e., was first to come).
16. The mother was killed first, then the infant.

Special Uses of Adjectives and Pronouns.

Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns are often used as Nouns, and sometimes with a Genitive depending on them :
 • *adversā omnēs mānent* *adversities await all* ; *multum frū-*
menti, plūs vīni much corn, more wine ; *montium altā the*
 • *heights of the mountains.*

English Nouns denoting *position* or *quantity* must often be rendered by an Adjective in Latin : *summūs mōns the top of the mountain*, *rēliqūis exercitūs the rest of the army.*

32.

1. Much wisdom ; more pride.
2. The river flows in the bottom of the (adj.) valley.
3. Dost thou say that the rest of the army has perished ?
4. The heat of the sun is greatest in the middle of the day.
5. Both too much and too little boldness are-injurious in a general.
6. We were wandering through the dark (parts) of the forest.
7. The ship was swallowed-up in the middle of (adj.) the sea.
8. The shepherd gave the boy half (adj.) an apple.
9. The whole of (adj.) the camp was burned in one night.
10. We had left the rest of (adj.) the books at Milētūs.
11. He has promised to come at the end of the (adj.) month.
12. I see something written on the back of the (adj.) paper.
13. He plunged the sword into the front of (adj.) his breast.
14. The cats were howling on the top of (adj.) the roof.
15. Through the rest of the night we were able to sleep.
16. [He] who has more money (gen.), has not therefore more happiness.
17. Too little wisdom (gen.) have they who are-unwilling to pay attention to small [things].
18. Thou wilt find a vocabulary at the end of the book.

19. He stood terrified at the end of the house.
20. An inscription has been engraved on the front of the pedestal.
21. Send me whatever thou hast valuable (gen.).
22. Nothing rich (gen.) or beautiful (gen.) have we at-home.

Miscellaneous Examples on the Cases.

33.

1. I have not seen him for (since) two-days.
2. Give me the book which I gave you yesterday.
3. Who does not know that he has effected a thing of great labour?
4. I have heard that she died at Alba.
5. In my judgment a most infamous crime.
6. Weary with fasting and our labours at length we reached the sea.
7. I know that he is a man of exceptional eloquence.
8. It is certain that he has now gone to Rhodes.
9. We have (*essē*) two-hundred sheep and thirty-three oxen.
10. He has a disposition spoiled by idleness and sloth.
11. In the winter the ant enjoys a rest from toil.
12. Who would wish (pres. subj.) to live a hundred years?
13. The old-woman's left hand feels-pain.
14. I heard that the horse was on-sale for a large [sum of] money.
15. Marcus tells me that he has jumped more than 20 feet.
16. It was our [business] to warn the dictator of this.
17. How often have I pardoned you!
18. I said that he had done it without our knowledge.
19. You will not be able to buy the estate for 2,000 talents.
20. The barbarians had no engines.
21. It is certain that she was very-skilled in the art of painting.

22. The messenger reports that the bridge over the 'Tiber has been broken-up.
- 23. He was more powerful (verb) at Corinth than at Athens.
24. I have told him what (pl.) his mother told me.
- 25. The estate cost me a much larger sum.
26. She writes that there is no news.
27. Go into the garden, which lies beyond the stream.
28. We thanked him in many most complimentary words.
29. Next to this is a bedroom half as large.
30. The word courage has another and very dissimilar sense.
31. I believe that he dwells on this side of the Tiber.
32. Never will I exchange ease for riches.
33. Why art thou unwilling to spare the innocent?
34. We saw a great cloud above the mountain.
35. His daughter has married my son.
36. What need has the philosopher of riches?
37. He was put on his trial for extortion.
38. It is certain that the enemy will attack us before night.
39. On alternate days we play foot-ball (abl.).
40. I heard that he lived-on milk and vegetables.
41. He plunged the dagger into the traitor's breast.
42. She was condemned on the capital charge.
43. All-men envy his good fortune.
- 44. Stripped of his clothes he died of the cold and his wounds.
45. They had carried (*dūcō*) a ditch 5 feet wide and 20 feet deep round the camp.
46. This man has harmed no one either by word or deed.
47. Why dost thou wish to go on a journey so dangerous?
48. Their-own rashness has injured many-men.
49. We wrote that he had (*ūtor*) not good health.
50. He does not (*nihil*) pity his-own-family.
51. I have persuaded him that she is at Rome.
- 52. I believe that Caesar has pardoned all the traitors.

53. Having gained-possession of the camp, they burned the tents.
54. Ye remember that cruel crime, of which nevertheless I will remind you.
55. I know that she has taught him music.
56. All ought to obey the laws, which are a protection to all.
57. Why was life given us, unless it-is-allowed to enjoy it?
58. Both thy mother and I grieve-over his death.
59. It is difficult to trust him who has once deceived us.
60. We then sailed into a sea crowded with fishes.
61. He dines on meat, I only on vegetables.
62. He informed the consul of the plans of Pyrrhus.
63. Thus-far the people heard him in silence.
64. Gātās sat above (*suprā*) Mārcus.
65. The people received these things with the greatest joy.
66. Nor was he ashamed of his own cowardice.
67. Those who indulge themselves are often unkind to others.
68. A much larger crowd flocked-round the general's tent.
69. The poor man remained a whole year in the island (acc.).
70. The punishment was much greater than the fault.
71. How canst thou forget so splendid a deed?
72. At length they arrived at Lēontinī, a town which (say *which town*) was distant eighteen miles.
73. I am persuaded (perf.) that he is a hindrance to our cause.
74. They relate that Mūrēna was a man of moderate talent.
75. He pitied the other, but this-man he has condemned to death.
76. These two accounts are not consistent.
77. We had not seen Atticus for (since) three years.
78. By your leave I will return after dinner.
79. I am weary of the worthless fellow.
80. I see that wolves are very like dogs.
81. How many miles can he run in one day?

82. They discharged missiles from horseback after the Persian fashion.
83. They reported that the army was destitute of provisions.
84. The fountain stands before the *rōstra* near Castor's temple.
85. It is the duty of the rich to succour the poor.
86. It is impious to conceal such a crime from the magistrates.
87. At that time I was free from (impf.) all business.
88. It is peculiar to fishes to live in water.
89. It is reported that she snatched the dagger from him.
90. He died the tenth year after.
91. We had grieved more at that than at Caesar's death.
92. Many things are wanting to him.
93. I believe that he is greedy of honour, but devoid of talent.
94. He has commanded the cavalry now many years.
95. Eurystheus imposed upon Hercūlēs twelve labours.
96. These plums are of a quite different taste from those.
97. We returned to Italy a few days after.
98. It is certain that his brother was an accomplice in the deed.
99. In eloquence he easily surpassed all of that time.
100. Why dost thou try (*cōnōr*) to hide this from us?
101. We spent two months at Cadiz.
102. I am sick of a fellow so forgetful of duty.
103. Hereafter we shall boast of greater things.
104. All things which were the woman's become the man's.
105. The ship was not able longer to withstand the violence of the waves.
106. Ask him for two books, of which give me one, and I will ask him for five books, of which I will give you one.
107. I saw him the third day before he died.

108. It is not the custom (gen.) of the Greeks to do such things.
109. To these men it is a delight to climb mountains.
110. No one ever took a more dangerous leap.
111. These were easily driven from the camp by our-men.
112. The Romans hated the name 'king.'
113. They report that Caesar has demanded hostages from the barbarians.
114. His father's death was a great grief to him.
115. It is certain that the sun is many times greater than the earth.
116. Then they bore the corpse out-of-doors to the tomb, which is situated in the Appian Road.
117. The goose is destructive (subst.) to the crop.
118. I believe that the virtue of mercy is not in him.
119. He will not be able to swim across the river armed.
120. His return will not be an advantage to us.
121. He was convicted of bribery, but acquitted of treason.
122. These ships are sailing to Syracuse, that most famous city.
123. Having said this, he returned by another road.
124. It is not to my interest that he be condemned.
125. He writes that he has discovered a manuscript of the best stamp.
126. How many miles is Ephesus distant from Smyrna?
127. What stands-in-the-way of his wish?
128. I had abstained from wine for many years.
129. I hold him in slight-estimation (use *parvūs*).
130. Përicles will sup at-the-house-of Phidiās to-day.
131. Antōniūs offered him a crown at the Lūpercālia.
132. Not all-men think that death is lighter than disgrace.
133. I believe he was then a boy of 15 years.
134. It is to the interest of both of us that they die.
135. That famous man governed Athens wisely for many years.
136. This bird's song is, in my judgment, sweeter than the nightingale's.

137. Who do you think will buy it at such-a-price ?
138. It will delight me to help you, if I shall be able.
139. A very great crowd is shouting outside the theatre.
140. Born of humble parents he nevertheless obtained the honour of the consulship.
141. We had plenty of food, but too little water.
142. These birds have screamed above the roof through the whole day.
143. Why do ye hesitate to ask the king for pardon ?
144. They obtained-possession of a country most fruitful in corn and olives.
145. Never before had I observed the thing.
146. It is now time to put fire under the pyre.
147. Who has (*esse*) not need of food and drink ?
148. He lives a life full of terrors and devoid of rest.
149. Not many survived that bloody battle.
150. When Caesar had been slain, the people threatened the conspirators with death.
151. Who taught thee the Latin language, my son ?
152. Bulls protect themselves with their horns, lions with the bite of their teeth.
153. What remedy against anger hast thou found ?
154. Many Sabine women were present at the spectacle.
155. The consul has not-yet been asked his opinion.
156. Hunger costs little, daintiness much.
157. It is the duty of all to show pity for the poor.
158. Thou hast pardoned me, and-so hast taught me mercy.
159. We need your advice and influence.
160. Why didst thou not inform me of his departure ?
161. It is incredible that he has arrived at Ephesus.
162. That city is more than 100 miles distant from the camp.
163. These things will be in no way profitable (subst.) to you.
164. He wrote with very great care things-worthy of immortality.

165. It does not become the master to be too sparing of praise.
166. He and I met Cicero returning to his own house.
167. They were standing near the temple of Castor.
168. He died eight days after (*postquam*) he was made consul.
169. A man absolutely unacquainted with liberal accomplishments.
170. I know that he has been kept-ignorant of his father's death.
171. Ireland is half as large as Britain.
172. It is useless to strive against so great forces.
173. It is [a mark] of brave-men to resist difficulties.
174. She tried to do it with hands unaccustomed to the task.
175. Go first to the forum, thence home.
176. In colour and appearance they are like dogs.
177. Beyond the mountains lies Tarsus, a most beautiful city.
178. These trees are of no use to the farmer.
179. He says that he remembers the living, but that he cannot forget the dead.
180. A furious storm fell-on the other ship.
181. The city of Tarsus is situated near the sea.
182. Paul, the greatest of the Apostles, was born at Tarsus.
183. Clōdus met Milo [as he was] travelling along this road.
184. I am persuaded (*perf.*) that he will oppose us.
185. Adversity reminds us of the powerlessness of man.
186. Ghosts of those whom I have slain hover before (*ōō*) my eyes.
187. He was a man of moderate talent, but of exceptional eloquence.
188. He has a son most enthusiastic after military and naval affairs.

189. We chased the boar through the wood with spears.
190. He lacks talent altogether, but is a man of greatest cunning.
191. I heard that she said this in the presence of the king.
192. He has (*essě*) arms of extraordinary length, which hang-down as far as his knees.
193. He was killed by his servants by (*pěř*) treachery.
194. With a man like-this (*hīc*) what can we do?
195. With-earnestness (adv.), nay, with-the-greatest earnestness he used to work many hours every-day.
196. You have written it with care indeed, but not (*něquě iāměn*) with the greatest care.
197. Who is willing to exchange old lamps for new ones?
198. With this cry the man walked-through the whole town.
199. At length he gained possession of the lamp of which he had (*essě*) need.
200. Perhaps you are-weary of these sentences, the two-hundredth having now (*iam*) been written.

PRONOUNS.

1. The Genitive of the Personal Pronouns (**měi, tūi, nostrī, vestrī, sūi**) is **never used** in a **Possessive** sense. The Possessive Adjective is used instead. Thus the Latin for 'the pleasure *of you alone*' is **tūā ūniūs vōluptās** (*not tūi*). Similarly **měā ipsiūs mănūs**, 'my *own* hand.'

2. These Genitives **are used Objectively** after Substantives, Adjectives, Verbs : *ămōr mēi love of me* (love of which I am the *object*) ; *měmōr vestrī mindful of you*.

They are *not*, however, used *Subjectively* : *my love*, i.e., the love *I feel*, is expressed by *ămōr mēūs*.

3. In a Partitive sense (and with *omnīum*), the Genitives **nostrum, vestrum** are used instead of *nostrī, vestrī* : *nēmō nostrum none of-us*.

The Neuter of Demonstrative and Relative Pronouns is

generally attracted so as to agree with its Subject : hōc
 ōpūs, hic lābōr est *this is the-work, this is the-toil* (not hōc
 lābōr est).

34.

1. This is the duty of thee alone.
2. None of you is more honourable than Brutus.
3. There remains for each of us two his own task.
4. Do this-thing not for the sake of me, but for the sake of
 thy country.
5. He is ashamed of us.
6. The lot of us all is the same.
7. I know that he is now unmindful of me.
8. We do not repent of the deed.
9. Italy is not the fatherland of me alone.
10. The deed must be done by thy hand alone.
11. Is not this the task of all of us ?
12. He gave two sesterces apiece to each-one of us.
13. This is the book which my father gave me.
14. None of us will be able to come to-day.
15. This is the house that my grandfather built.
16. We cannot praise a man powerless-over himself.
17. Thou knowest that I am most-devoted-to thee.
18. Love of oneself is a source of many evils.
19. I have wounded my own hand.
20. These crimes have been committed by your own hands,
 villains.

Certain expressions where the Personal Pronoun is not
 partitive and apposition is employed require particular care.
 Thus *there are six hundred of us* is expressed by sexcenti
 sūmūs (*we are six hundred*); *each of us has his own book*
 sūm quisquē librum hābēmūs (*we have a book, each his own*).
 Here quisquē is in apposition to nōs understood.

21. Four of us have come, wishing to play.
22. How-many are ye ? There are forty of us.

23. Each of us will ride on his own horse.
 24. There are two hundred of these women.
 25. We each study our own books.
 26. There are three and thirty of us.
 27. Take each your own sword.
 28. Forty of us have sworn that we will kill this man.
 29. Has each of you his own sword?
 30. We shall each endure his own fate.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

The following point out with emphasis :—

hic *this (near me)* corresponding to the First Person.

istē *that (near you)* „ „ Second Person.

illē *that (yonder)* „ „ Third Person.

hic is often used of what is mentioned last ; **illē** of what has been mentioned before it, and *sometimes* (as also *is*) of *what is going to be mentioned*.

illē often expresses *approval* or *surprise* ; **istē** *admiration, dislike, or contempt*.

is, *he, that*, is quite unemphatic, and is used to avoid repeating a Noun.

Nihil scō dē istā rē ; hunc I know nothing of that
 rōgā matter ; ask *him*.

Illum librum vōlō *That* is the book I want.

Hic ēquēs, illē pūgīl *The one* is a rider, *the other*
 a boxer.

Sōphōclēs illē *The famous* Sophocles.

Istē tūūs nātūs *Your fine* son.

Reddē ēum librum quem Restore *the* book you took
 abstūlistī away.

Māgnā urbs ēāquē clārā A great city and a famous
 one.

idem *the same* is used with **quī** (*quae, quōd*), **atquē**, and **āc** (but *not āc*, if a vowel follows) in the sense of *the same*

as : haec avis eādem est quam vidēram *this bird is the same as I had seen* ; idem est atquē sempēr fūit *he is the same as he always was*.

idem is also used idiomatically as follows : vīr innōcentissimū idemquē doctissimū, 'a most simple-minded man and at the same time very learned.'

35.

1. Have you seen the famous Pěřiclēs ?
2. You have gained much praise by that-grand victory of yours.
3. These virgins were wise, those foolish.
4. Return to me the (pron.) book I lent you.
5. It was by *that* road that he went-away (no rel. clause).
6. That book of yours pleased me much.
7. I hate that-fellow.
8. This is the same house as we had inhabited before.
9. That-fellow Clōdiūs will always be the same as he now is.
10. A small city but at-the-same-time a most charming one.
11. This (not *hic*) disturbs me, that he went away so suddenly (acc. with inf.).
12. One-thing (not *unū*), however, I fear—lest he may have died (perf. subj.) already.
13. The daughters are learned and at-the-same-time most beautiful.
14. That was not the legion they conquered (no rel. clause).
15. She is not now the same as she was formerly.
16. He gave me three large apples, and sweet ones too.
17. One thing I grieve-at, that Gāiūs laughed.
18. These cities are very old and famous too.
19. I should-like (*vēlim*) to break that-fellow's (dat.) ankles.
20. These trees are the same as they always were.

Reflexive Pronouns.

The Reflexive Pronouns always refer to a *Subject*. This Subject (which is always of the Third Person) is—

(a) Usually the *Subject* of the *Sentence* (or *Clause*): *dē turri sūa sē prōiēcit* *he threw himself from his own tower*; *scēlūs est mortem sibi cōnsciscēre* *it is a crime to compass one's own death*.

(b) In Dependent Clauses *sē* and *sūūs* may refer to the subject of the Principal Clause. They are then translated in English by *him, her, &c.*: *ōrant Caesārem ūt sibi subvēniat* *they implore Caesar to help them*.

(c) *sē* and *sūūs* may always be used, both in Principal and Dependent clauses, to translate *himself, &c., his own, &c., if no ambiguity results* from so doing.

In other cases *he, him, his, &c.*, are to be rendered by *is or illē*.

ipsē self, is used of all persons. It generally agrees with the word it emphasises: *nōn ēgō ēi sēd sibi ipsē nōcūit* 'I did not injure him, but *he* (injured) *himself*'; *miserēt mē nōn vestri sēd mēi ipsiūs*, 'I pity not *you* but *myself*'; *ipsē vēnit* 'he comes *of himself*'; *hōmō ipsē est* 'it is *the very man*.'

Note that *ipsē*, if used with *sē, sūūs*, generally follows those words.

36.

1. I have heard that he deserted his own son.
2. Thou pitiest not me but thyself.
3. This bird is said to devour its own heart.
4. She has said that she will come.
5. He killed not his friend but himself.
6. This man did not kill himself: his friends killed him in the senate-house.
7. His own wife killed this man by poison.
8. A few, however, believed that she was innocent of the crime.

9. It is piteous to perish in one's own house by the craft of one's own relations.
10. I fear not about your courage, but about his loyalty.
11. It was infamous that he was deceived by their treachery.
12. Whosoever is-confident-in himself will not fear their threats.
13. The queen came of herself, and addressed the sick man kindly.
14. If ghosts do not return to the earth of themselves, assuredly they will not come at-the-request (abl.) of triflers.
15. He is not ashamed of his own wickedness.
16. Mārcus declares hat he is-weary of this business.
17. I suppose that he is mad, for he affirms that he is the grandfather of Julius Caesar.
18. The doctor says that this madness seized him on-the-announcement-of the death (abl. abs.) of his son.
19. I believe that he is skilled in this game, although he says that he has never played it.
20. Although his friends declare Socrates to be very wise, he himself says that he knows nothing.
21. He believes that Apollo spoke the truth (neut. pl.) about him.
22. He said that the brigand had robbed him.
23. He says that she gave him the book.
24. She denies that she gave him the book.
25. I am sure that she gave it him.
26. He hopes that she will marry him.
27. Her mother says that she will not marry.
28. The girl herself says that he is unwilling to marry her.

Alius. Alter. Ceteri.

Aliūs means *another* of several; **altēr** *another* of two, *the other* of two, or *the one* of two; **cētērī** means *the rest*; **altērī** (pl.) means *the other party*.

37.

1. I wish to buy another horse : these are too-spirited.
2. She was wise ; the rest were foolish.
3. The one house is Mārcus', the other Gāiūs'.
4. The barbarians retreated by the other road
5. He gave the one horse to me, the other to my brother.
6. The other-party fled by another road.
7. Scipio and Publius have arrived by another road.
8. These now weary gave-way, but others came-up.
9. One of the consuls declared that he would not (*nōlō*) fight.
10. Many were killed (abl. abs.), the rest retreated.
11. The one is going home, the other to the country ; the rest I shall retain with me at Rome.
12. Cassius spared one of the conspirators, and killed the other.
13. Let others praise Corinth ; this is the city which I love (no rel. clause).
14. I have sent some of the books to Athens ; the rest are here.
15. Cicero was a famous orator ; no other was more eloquent than he.
16. These he kept in the camp, the other-troop he led-out.

Uter, Uterque, &c.

Latin uses different Pronouns to express *one of two* and *one of several*.

Referring to two.

ūter?	<i>which?</i>
ūterquē?	<i>each, both.</i>
ūtercumquē	<i>whichever.</i>
ūtervis	<i>whichever you please.</i>
altēr	<i>the other.</i>

Referring to several.

quīs?	<i>which ? who ?</i>
quisquē	<i>each of several.</i>
quicumquē	<i>whoever.</i>
quīvis	<i>which you please.</i>
āliūs	<i>another.</i>

neutĕr	<i>neither.</i>	nĕmo	<i>none, no one.</i>
altĕrŭtĕr	<i>one or the other.</i>		
Hōrum hōmīnum ūtrum lau- dās? ūtrumque		<i>Which of these men do you praise? Both.</i>	
Ūtrumvis ēlīgĕ; altĕrum mihī habēbō		<i>Choose which you please; I will have the other myself.</i>	
Altĕr altĕri invidēt		<i>They envy one another.</i>	
Centum militēs ālīūs sŭpĕr ālīum corrŭērunt		<i>A hundred soldiers fell, one upon another.</i>	
Sŭm cuiquĕ reddātur		<i>Let each have his own (pro- perty).</i>	

Note that, as in the last example, quisquĕ always follows the Reflexives.

38.

1. Which brother of the two has died?
2. I believe that both have perished.
3. Neither was-present in the senate to-day.
4. Behold two golden apples; take which you please.
5. Give one or the other to the victor.
6. I saw two maidens; each was bearing a pitcher on her head.
7. Here [two] twin brothers fought; the one killed the other.
8. Which of these two speeches do you prefer?
9. I have heard neither (speech).
10. Read to me which of the two you please.
11. I know the citizens of that town; they always envy one another.
12. Which of the two sisters did he marry?
13. I know not: one or the other afterwards married Gāiūs.
14. Is it certain that each of the two daughters is unmarried?
15. Give me one or the other of (*ex*) these books: keep the other for yourself.
16. Each of the two camps has been burned.

17. Let each-man bring his own provisions.
18. Very-great fear fell on each-party, when they saw these things.
19. One took one ball, one the other ; I had neither.
20. Behold two garlands ; take which you please.
21. Let each take-care for himself.
22. Each was carrying his-own-goods on his back.
23. Saying this, each offered himself as a hostage.
24. Each carrying his-own children on his shoulders, they went out of the town.
25. Who will deny that each man is accustomed to consult for himself.

Indefinite Pronouns.—A.

aliquis refers to a quite indefinite person or thing : *someone, some* ; *dixerit aliquis someone may say*. It sometimes expresses considerable emphasis : *sēsē aliquem crēdēs thinking himself somebody*.

quis *someone, anyone, some, any*, is frequent after *sī, nē, num ? &c.*, and can never stand first in a sentence.

N.B.—(1) *Aliquis* is much more emphatic than *quis*. (2) It should be *avoided in Negative clauses*.

nesciō-quis (declined as one word) is *someone or other, I don't know who*. It often expresses *indifference or contempt*.

quidam, *certain, a certain one*, is used of definite persons whom we do not mention more particularly : *quidam rhētōr a certain rhetorician*.

Note the following, which refer to number or quantity :

Aliquōt servi	<i>Several slaves.</i>
Nōn nullā pars militum	<i>A certain part of the troop.</i>
Nōn nihīl tīmēō	<i>I am somewhat afraid.</i>

quisquam (Noun-Adj.) *anyone* (at all) and **ullūs** (Noun-Adj. and Adj.) *any* (at all) are only used in Principal

16. Thou must not murder anyone.
17. Thou must-not-bury (imper.) the corpse within the walls.
18. I found there scarcely any water.
19. Has Rome suffered any disaster so terrible? [No.]
20. Do you want (*vīs*) any gold (gen.)?
21. Who does not wish to be somebody?
22. There we met a certain Lēpídus, a most courteous man.
23. If anybody saw the deed, let him speak.
24. We saw several fellows of the lowest sort standing-round.
25. He has never injured anyone by word or deed.
26. Have you ever before seen anyone so strong.
27. Somebody or other told me that Caesar had led his army across the Rubicon.
28. But have we received any news? someone may ask.
29. I do not believe that any crime more dreadful has been committed.
30. Does he say that he will-not (*nōlō*) go? But it is necessary that someone go immediately.

Indefinite Pronouns.—B.

Reciprocal action is expressed by

Alīi āliā affirmant	<i>One says one thing, one another.</i>
Alīus sup̄er ālium	<i>One upon another.</i>
Altēr altēri invidēt	<i>They envy one another.</i>

But *altēr* can only be used when *two* persons or *two sets* of persons are in question.

One another, each other, are also expressed by *intēr* with *sē*, *nōs*, *vōs*, *as*, *inter sē diligunt they love one another.*

Optimūs quisquē civīs	<i>The best citizens.</i>
Tertiō quōquē verbō	<i>At every third word.</i>

If *each* means *each one taken singly*, *singlī* must be used: *singlī singulōrum dēōrum sacerdōtēs sunt there is one priest to each god; crescit in diēs singulōs hostiū nūmērūs the number of the enemy grows each (or every) day.*

40.

1. One loves one thing, one another.
2. They were falling headlong (adj.) one upon another.
3. They will bring gifts, some one, some another.
4. Then the soldiers began to kill each other.
5. Let us assist one another.
6. The two brothers hated one another.
7. The festival returns every third year.
8. He threw the best citizens into prison.
9. We were not able to recognise one another.
10. One strives about one thing, one about another.
11. They received each-singly a penny.
12. Why do ye envy one another?
13. It becomes not brothers to injure one another.
14. He plundered all the richest citizens.
15. All the bravest soldiers were still holding the camp.
16. As every tenth name was pronounced (abl. abs.), one of
(*ex*) the soldiers was led-away.
17. Some-things delight some-men, other-things others.
18. The father and son assisted one another.
19. We gave each of the boys (singly) a ball.
20. These things rouse all the worst citizens to sedition.
21. They rushed out of their houses, one in one direction,
one in another.
22. They swore they would not betray one another.
23. I know that these two brothers have not-yet pardoned
each other.
24. He attached to himself all the most infamous rogues.
25. Give him a draught of milk every four hours.

Co-ordinate Conjunctions.—A.

Quē couples more closely than *ē*t.

atquē (*āc* only before *consonants*) emphasises the second member: *vīr atquē mūliēr a man and a woman besides.*

In coupling several words, it is usual to omit the conjunction with all or to insert it with all.

Clārūs fortūnā ōpībūs fidē	} <i>Illustrious for his fortune,</i>	
Clārūs fortūnā ēt ōpībūs ēt		} <i>his wealth, and his trust-</i>
fidē		

In coupling *two Substantives or Adjectives*, a conjunction must be used, even if omitted in English.

Hōmō imprōbūs ēt audāx *A bold bad man.*

Multi ēt pōtentēs vīri *Many powerful men.*

aut is used where it is important to insist on the difference; **vēl** and **vě** (always appended to a word) are used where it is not important to insist on the difference; **sīvē** (or **seu**, only used before *consonants*) is used chiefly to correct what has preceded, and is generally followed by *pōtīūs rather*.

Either. . . or is expressed by doubling the conjunction: *aut . . . aut, vēl . . . vēl*.

41.

1. Let us cultivate knowledge and wisdom.
2. Few men are illustrious-for (say *by*) wisdom and wealth [besides].
3. A bold energetic man.
4. In this country are many ancient cities.
5. I should prefer to be either Caesar or nobody (*nūllūs*).
6. Bring a horse or a bullock.
7. He is a very-dear friend to me, or rather a second self (*altēr ěgō*).
8. Take, O victor, *either* the horse *or* the goblet.
9. If thou wishest sword or helmet, behold I have both ready.
10. I know him, a fat red-faced boy.
11. Nay, he is a thin dark boy.
12. Caesar used to hate thin silent men.
13. Do (*i.e., conquer*) or die!

14. Return, my son, either with this or on it.
15. Slingers generally choose smooth round pebbles.
16. The wall is built of large square stones.

B.—*Nam, enim, sed, autem, &c.*

For is expressed by **nam** and **enim**; **nam** being generally used to introduce an *explanation* or *illustration*, **enim** to introduce a *reason*: *idem frātrī plācūit*; **nam** *ēum quōquē cōsūlūi* *my brother was of the same opinion*; *for I consulted him also*.

Of all the conjunctions which mean *but*, **autem** is far the weakest, and indeed is frequently an equivalent for the English **and**: *multōs sēcum librōs attūlit, dūōs autem mīhī dēdit* *he brought a number of books with him, and gave me two*. It must often be inserted where there is no conjunction in the English: *hic pontem faciendum cūrāvīt. formā autem eiūs haec fūit* *here he caused a bridge to be built. Its form was the following*.

If *opposition* is to be expressed, **sēd** or **vērūm** is used. Strong opposition is marked by **āt**.

And not is to be expressed by **nēc** or **nēquē**; **but not**, by **nēc, nēquē, nēquē vērō**, or **nēquē tāmēn**. Similarly **nēc unquam, nēquē quisquam**, are to be used for *and* (or *but*) *never*, and (or *but*) *no-one*.

N.B.—Neither **enim** nor **autem** can begin a clause or a sentence, and both generally stand in the second place.

42.

1. Give one apple to me and two to her.
2. Plato is my friend, but truth more (*māgīs*) a friend.
3. I would willingly die (*mōrīūr*) for Mārcus, I love him so-much.
4. Thou hast said many-things, but few to the point.
5. I did not say 'bees,' but 'birds.'
6. In the first book he speaks about the nature of the country, and in the second about the inhabitants.

7. They questioned the boy, *but* did *not* receive an answer.
8. I know Scipio well : his son married my sister.
9. I have traversed the whole city, *and* have seen disturbance *nowhere*.
10. The inhabitants they led away into slavery, *and* the town they burned.
11. I was walking to the forum, he to the Temple of Mars.
12. He was speaking a-long-time, *but* did *not* persuade *anybody*.
13. He promised to sup with (*ăpăd*) me, but did not come.
14. Love him much, for he has often assisted me.
15. He was acquitted of treason not by one vote but by many.
16. He was condemned of extortion, but not by many votes.
17. Yes, I heard him ; he was delivering his speech in the forum.
18. Bring with you herbs, but not wine.
19. He spoke with great effort, but no one was able to hear him.

Ne quidem, Nedum, Quam maximus, &c.

Nē . . . quidem, meaning *not even*, must always be separated by the word *they emphasize* : *nē mors quidem not even death*.

Nēdum (*not to speak of*) means *much more* or *much less*, according to the context : *impārēs cōhorti, nēdum tōtī exercitūi unequal to a cohort, not to speak of the whole army ; vēniā nēdum laudē omninō indignum not deserving of pardon, not to speak of praise*.

Quam is used with **Superlatives** to express the highest possible degree : *itinerībūs quam mǎximis with the longest possible marches*.

43.

1. Not even thou, Antōnius, wilt persuade me.
2. I hear that not even Brūtus is faithful to me.
3. Not even thy friends will believe thee.
4. He has done the most disgraceful deed possible.
5. Let us return home with all-possible speed.
6. This-man declares that not even princes are always happy.
7. I-call-to-witness all the wisest-men of Athens, not to say of the whole of Greece.
8. The-battle-was-fought as-keenly-as-possible.
9. It-is-certain that he does not excel Pyrrhus, much less Alexander.
10. They were unable to seize, much less to kill him.
11. Not even by giving hostages (abl. abs.) were the Gauls able to obtain peace.
12. I consulted the wisest men possible, but not even they could tell me.
13. He is not equal to Hortēnsius, much less to Cicero.
14. There we endured the greatest possible heat.
15. Not even so great a disaster was able to crush the Romans.

The Finite Verb.

INSERTION OF PRONOUNS.—The Third Person of a Verb requires the insertion of a Pronoun where it would not be clear to what Noun it referred : *Balbūs ūxōrem dūcīt, ěā proximō mēnsē mōritūr* *Balbus marries a wife, she dies in the following month.*

If *ěā* were not put in, *mōritūr* would refer to *Balbūs*, the Subject of the preceding sentence.

INDEFINITE USE OF THE PERSONS.—An Indefinite Subject to a Verb, *one, people*, etc., is expressed by—

- (a) **First Person Plural** : *quae vōlūmūs libentēr crēdimūs* *one readily believes what one wishes.*

- (b) **Third Person Plural**, of Verbs of saying, etc.:
hōc vulgō crēdunt *people believe this generally.*
- (c) **The Passive Voice**: rēx dilīgītūr *people love the king.*
- (d) **Second Person Singular** of the *Subjunctive*:
āmentem illum pūtēs *one would think him a madman.*

44.

1. The king has a fair daughter; she is wiser than her brother.
2. You are the man who killed Mārcus, a Roman citizen.
3. One cannot sufficiently admire Cicero's eloquence.
4. One would not easily believe a fool.
5. People blame fortune, not themselves.
6. One fights most bravely for those whom one loves.
7. Thou art braver than a lion; I am wiser than a serpent.
8. I am [he] who taught (1st pers.) the bird to speak.
9. He is at Rome with my sister; she will return in two years.
10. One cannot obey the good and the bad at the same time.
11. People say that Caesar is *not* dead.
12. One-would-think that the animal is very timid.
13. One gives twice if one gives quickly.
14. People are accustomed to fight for their fatherland.
15. Thou wilt be drowned, but I shall swim safely.

Impersonal Verbs.

The following five Impersonals:

pīgēt, pūdēt, paenītēt taedēt atque mīsērēt	} take	{	Accusative of Person.
			Genitive of Mental Object.
			Infinitive of Verb:

as paenītēt mē factī *I am sorry for what has been done;*
pūdēt dicērē *I am ashamed to say.*

paenitēt may also take a Neuter Pronoun : *hōc mē paenitēt I am dissatisfied with this. miserēt* does not take the Inf.

N.B.—These Verbs often represent Personal Verbs in English : *taedēt mē vitae I am weary of life.*

45.

1. I am weary of marches and toils.
2. We are ashamed of our faults.
3. It disgusts me to tell of my son's deeds.
4. The maiden is not sorry for her father's death.
5. The miserable are weary of life.
6. Few repent of a kindness [done].
7. I have heard that he is not ashamed of the crime.
8. Thou pitiest me.
9. Why dost thou not pity thyself?
10. O thou who pitiest all, why dost thou not pity us most miserable-men?
11. It is snowing : I shall now go home.
12. Tithōnus was weary of everlasting old age.
13. It is irksome to a wise man to converse with a fool.
14. Behold a god whom Jupiter pities not. It is Prōmētheus.
15. He stole fire, and does not repent of the theft.
16. Neither is he ashamed of his punishment, because he benefited mortals.
17. I am ashamed to hear that he is disgusted with his work.
18. It-is-growing-light ; it is time to set-out.
19. They are weary of peace ; we of war.
20. Who does not pity the unhappy maiden ?
21. He saw many who were weary of battles and sieges.
22. I have not found many who are weary of life.
23. He punished none of those who were sorry for their crimes.
24. Who will pity a king who has betrayed his-people (*sūus*).
25. Neither pitied the other.

Impersonal Verbs (*continued*).

The following list gives the construction of Nouns and Verbs with the chief Quasi-Impersonals :—

accidit <i>happens</i> , D. Pers. ; ūt w. Subj.	fit <i>happens</i> , as est.
appāret <i>is plain</i> , as liquet.	rūvat <i>delights</i> , Acc. Pers.: Inf.
cōstat <i>is established, is certain</i> , Inf. w. Acc.	libet <i>pleases</i> , Neut. Pron.: Inf.
convēnit <i>is agreed</i> , ūt Subj.	licet <i>is allowed</i> , Neut. Pron., D. Pers.: Inf., or ūt Subj.
<i>is suitable</i> , Inf.	liquet <i>is plain</i> , Neut. Pron., D. Pers.: Inf.
dēcet <i>is becoming</i> , Neut. Pron., Acc. Pers.: Inf.	oportet <i>is right</i> , Neut. Pron., Acc. Pers.: Inf. or ūt Subj.
dēdecet <i>is unbecoming</i> , as dēcet.	plācet <i>pleases</i> , D. Pers.: Inf. or ūt Subj.
ēvenit <i>happens</i> , as accidit.	restāt <i>remains</i> , D. Pers.: ūt Subj.
est <i>happens, is possible</i> , ūt Subj.	sēquitur <i>follows</i> , ūt Subj.
expēdit <i>is useful</i> , D. Pers.: ūt Subj.	

The Third Person Singular of the Passive is frequently used impersonally : lūdītūr *there is playing, playing goes on* ; pugnātum est *there was a battle*.

46.

1. Fighting-is-going-on near the bridge.
2. It happened that I was writing.
3. A good citizen ought (*oportet*) to obey the laws
4. It is established that the king is now dying.
5. They came (pass. impers.) into the senate-house.
6. A battle-was-fought at Cannae, where Hannibal defeated Paullus.
7. It delights one to study literature.
8. It is possible that he may conquer.
9. It is plain that the one has killed the other.
10. A game-was-being-played on the broad sand.
11. The running-takes-place in the Campus Mārtius.
12. It remains to complete the rest of (adj.) the task.
13. We are not allowed to go out at night.
14. The people are-delighted to see the general returning victorious

15. A king ought to rule the citizens justly.
16. You are not allowed to act in this way.
17. It is useful for you to do this.
18. It follows that no one becomes very bad suddenly.
19. You will not be allowed to depart.
20. It is certain that Antōnius perished in Egypt.
21. How happens it (*quī fit*) that no one saw him?
22. It is not right that she (should) be deserted.
23. This becomes thee not.
24. They will be allowed to go in.
25. It remains to ask Cicero his opinion.
26. There-was-shouting in the city, but in the palace there was-silence everywhere.
27. The consul was not permitted to set-out.
28. It is right for young men to venerate the old (*sēnex*).
29. Shall I never be allowed to reply?
30. It is certain that Queen Anne (Annā the queen) is dead.
31. Resistance-is-shewn (*rēsistō*) by the infantry.

The Passive Voice.

Intransitive Verbs can only be used impersonally in the Passive. Thus *Brūtūs ēt Cassiūs Caesārī invidēt Brutus and Cassius envy Caesar*, becomes *ā Brūtō ēt Cassiō Caesārī invidētūr Caesar is envied, envy is felt towards Caesar, by Brutus and Cassius*; *captivīs parsum est the captives were spared*.

Note that if the Intransitive Verb governs a Case (as *Caesārī* above), that Case is retained with the Passive.

47.

1. Ye are envied.
2. Certain of the captives were spared.
3. Even thieves are trusted (*crēdō*) by their own people.
4. The cause of Liberty will be injured.
5. The weak are indulged by the strong.

6. Not yet has he been persuaded.
7. The innocent will be pardoned.
8. The dictator is envied by his friends.
9. The State is injured by speeches of this kind.
10. He will not be persuaded by his brother.
11. He is favoured by all.
12. This plan had been injured by the consul's rashness.
13. The women and children will be spared.
14. The guilty will not be pardoned.
15. He must be trusted (*crēdō*).
16. The proposers of the plan must not be trusted.
17. Neither the ringleader in the conspiracy, nor the rest must be spared.
18. A prudent man's prosperity is often envied by those who are less wise.
19. Brennus will be resisted by the Romans.
20. Of (*ex*) the captives no one was spared.

Passive Voice (*continued*).

The Passive is often used, especially in old writers and poets, to denote an action performed by the Subject on itself: *exercēōr I exercise myself, rēcrēōr I refresh myself.*

Many of these Passives are to be translated by an English Intransitive Verb: *rumpōr I burst, pāscōr I feed, volvōr I roll.*

48.

1. The soldiers were refreshing themselves in the water.
2. The lake has burst.
3. The river rolls and will roll for ever.
4. The swine are feeding in the wood.
5. Who is-ignorant that the world moves?
6. The soldiers were exercising in the forum.
7. The bladder inflated too-much suddenly burst.
8. The helmet had rolled down from the top of the rock.
9. The ancients did not believe that the earth moved.

10. These refresh themselves with water, those with wine.
11. The earth revolves once every day (*singŭlis diēbŭs*).
12. The enemy were not-yet moving.
13. The frog almost burst, being desirous of imitating the bull.

Special Uses of the Tenses.

I. The Present and Imperfect are used for actions of *general or frequent occurrence*: Pausāniās ēpŭlābātŭr mōrē Persārum *Pausanias used-to-banquet in the style of the Persians*.

II. The same tenses, especially the Imperfect, are also used of an action *purposed or attempted*, but not carried out: quid mē terrēs? *why do you try-to-frighten me?* sēdābant tŭmultŭs *they tried-to-allay the outbreaks*.

This use affects the translation of many Verbs. Thus: dēdi is *I gave*; but dō, dābam, often mean *I offer, I offered*.

III. They are also used with *iam already*, and similar Adverbs, of actions which *have been going on for some time*: annum iam audīō Crātippum *I have been already hearing Cratippus for a year*, iamdŭdum tibi adversābār *I had long been opposing you*.

IV. The Present is often used vividly in speaking of past events; Iŭgurthā vallō moeniā circumdāt *Jugurtha surrounded the walls with an entrenchment*.

This use is called the **Historic Present**. It is regularly found with *dum whilst*.

49.

1. He offered a cup to the king.
2. The son tried to kill his mother.
3. She herself for-a-long-time has been opposing him.
4. They used to-lie-in-wait-for each other.
5. While the old man offered a cup, a slave spoke.
6. I have been dwelling here a year now.
7. Then the infantry fled, and our cavalry tried to pursue

8. He had been serving the State now-for-a-long-time.
9. The soldiers were trying to ascend the walls.
10. Canūtus tries to calm the waves.
11. He was trying to escape through the garden while we were searching the house.
12. We have been fighting ten years now.
13. Wise-men used to deny that the earth was round.
14. The queen declares that she has been reigning now fifty years.
15. While you were delaying in the country, your wife died.
16. The Greeks used to call all other nations 'barbarians.
17. I had long been declaring that the man was dead.
18. I have been at Brundisium ten days now.
19. I have long been trying to persuade Brutus that Caesar is an enemy to the Republic.
20. While the cat slept the mice escaped.

THE MOODS.

Imperative.

N.B.—In this Exercise, if the English Imperative of the *Second Person* is negatived, translate by *nōlī* with infinitive : *nōlī invīdērē do not* (i.e. *be unwilling to*) *envy*. (But see also next Exercise.)

Nē with the Imperative (as *nē crēdē do not believe*), though regular in Poetry, is not found in Classical Prose.

50.

1. Obey, my son, the words of thy mother.
2. Do not those things which displease her.
3. Laugh and sing, ye shepherds, beneath the beech.
4. Do not spare, most brave general, thy country's foe.
5. Do not trust a treacherous friend.
6. Follow me, comrades ; so shall we escape.
7. Write-down what these witnesses say.
8. Thou must-kill the man, thy guest.

9. Do not (ye) deny that the money has been lost.
10. Thou must-be-heedful, Cato, for thy foes are trying to destroy thee.
11. Despise not a poor man ; flatter not the rich.
12. Be good, my daughter ; do not despise duty.
13. Fight bravely, comrades, so shall we gain the victory.
14. Run home at full speed, and tell my wife that I am in the city.
15. Lead us home, Scipio ; we are weary of this war.

Subjunctive of Desire.

SUBJUNCTIVE OF DESIRE (*Negative nē*).—This is found—

(1) In *Wishes* or *Hopes* : *mōriār may I die ! ūtīnam nē fēlix sīt O that he might not be happy ! ūtīnam nē quid tālē accidissēt would that nothing of the sort had happened !*

(2) In *Requests* or *Commands* : *nē fēcēris hōc pray do not do this ; ābēāt let him go away ; nē ābēāt let him not go away ; hōc nē faciāmūs let us not do this.*

As stated under the previous section, Negative Requests or Prohibitions in the Second Person are not expressed in Classical Latin Prose by the Imperative ; one of the following forms must be employed :—

(1) **nōlī** with **Infinitive**, as *nōlī nēgārē do not deny.*

(2) **nē** with **Perf. Subjunctive**, as *nē dixēris hōc do not say this.*

Prohibitions in the Third Person are expressed by **nē** with the Subjunctive. Such expressions as *nē sēpēlitō* are formal, and almost entirely confined to legal phraseology.

In prohibitions **and not, but not, nor**, is expressed by **nēvē** or (before consonants only) **neu** : *ābī, nēvē hīc dīūtūs sīs mōrātūs be off, and do not linger here longer.*

1. May I behold my enemies defeated !

2. May I never be called the friend of Clōdīus !
3. May he receive a reward worthy of his deeds !
4. Let the man do what (pl.) he has been commanded (impers.).
5. Do not believe the words of that man.
6. Do not think that your mother is wicked.
7. May the queen live long and enjoy prosperity !
8. Do not kill me, who have never injured you.
9. O that my father may not perish in this terrible battle !
10. Go-away, boy, *and* do *not* talk-of things about which you know (subjunct.) nothing.
11. May such a man die most miserably !
12. Be not angry, O king, *nor* chide me.
13. Do not tell your son that I am in the city.
14. Let us ask Cato for his opinion.
15. Do not remain in the country.
16. Do not deprive the state of your services.
17. May you never repent of that deed nor fail us !
18. Would that I had never come into this place !
19. Would that I had died first (*prīus*) !
20. Would that thou hadst not come nor spoken !

Supines and Gerunds.

The **Supine** in *-um* denotes Purpose, and is used with **Verbs** which imply **Motion** : *audītum ēō Cīcērōnem I go to hear (I go a-hearing) Cicero.*

The Supine in *-ū* is used after Adjectives : *horrendum audītū fearful to hear (in the hearing).* Its use is very limited.

The Nominative of Gerunds is only used (in Classical Latin) from Intransitive Verbs, and with the meaning of Obligation : *ēundum est nobīs there is going for us, i.e. we must go.*

N.B.—The **Gerund** and **Gerundive** take the **Dat.** (not *ā* with the Ablative) of the **Agent**, except when the Verb governs a Dative, and it is necessary to avoid ambiguity: *tibi cēdendum est thou must yield*; *mīhi ā tē persuādendum est thou must persuade me*.

Examples of the other cases are: *aptūs ad pingendum quick at painting* (Acc.), *viā nocendi hostībūs a way of doing-harm to the enemy* (Gen.), *sālūtem hōmīnībūs dandō by giving safety to men* (Abl.), *scribendō adfuērunt they were-present to write, i.e., acted as secretaries* (Dat.).

When the Verb would govern an Acc., the *Gerundive* is generally used instead of the Gerund. See 53, and 73. 2, *fin.*

52.

1. Who is going to see the prince's wedding?
2. They have committed crimes fearful to tell of.
3. We must fight bravely for our sons and daughters.
4. Fabius taught his soldiers a new mode of fighting.
5. He was quick at talking, and skilful at writing.
6. They who wish to gain rewards must strive earnestly.
7. We ought to be ashamed of such a kinsman.
8. The sun has set, and the birds are going to sleep.
9. The kings were present to see the games.
10. By doing this, ye can win great glory, fellow-soldiers.
11. A prodigy, terrible to see, is related by the peasants.
12. This is not a time for delaying.
13. Let us hasten to beg-for peace.
14. If anyone wishes to win the crown, he must run fast.
15. We will appoint a day for hearing the case.
16. Men must work on the sea, and women must weep at-home.
17. By waiting in the harbour we shall escape the storm.
18. We must not despair, with-you for our leader.
19. All must assemble to the forum.
20. He also must obey the laws of the state.

The Gerundive.

A.

The Nominative of the Gerundive, like the Gerund, is used in the sense of *obligation* or *purpose*: *hostēs nōbis vincendī sunt* *the enemy are for us to conquer, we must conquer the enemy.*

In the other Cases it is used instead of the Gerund when the latter takes a Direct Object in the Acc. The Object and the Gerundive are put in the same gender, number, and case. Thus instead of *in administrandō rem publicam* *in conducting the government (public affairs)*, we say *in rē publicā administrandā*; instead of *causā iudicandī rem* we say *causā rēi iudicandae* *for the sake of deciding the matter.*

Note the following :—

Food will have to be prepared

Food had to be prepared

Cibūs pāranda ērit.

Cibūs pāranda ērāt.

53.

1. The art of a good fisherman is shewn in catching fish.
2. The woman who has killed her husband with poison must be punished.
3. What will be my (*to me*) reward for (*of*) acquitting the accused?
4. Fathers must be obeyed by their sons.
5. Nūmā was skilful in making laws.
6. The teaching of philosophers must not be despised even by kings.
7. I go to Rome for the sake of hearing Cicero.
8. They say that the Gauls must be conquered by Caesar.
9. Of writing books there is no end.
10. Deceit must be avoided by the good.
11. Twelve men were appointed for the sake of carrying-on the State.
12. Triumvirs for coining [and] stamping gold, silver, copper. [III. viri A.A.A.F.F.]

13. Who can find a method of numbering the stars?
14. He was accused of killing a man with a dagger.
15. The robbers will have to be condemned to death.
16. Was anyone more unskilful in carrying on war?
17. It is clear that he had to write the letter.
18. I said that you must want the money.
19. Large sums-of-money had to be provided by me.
20. You will have to carry a ditch 10 feet wide round the
camp
21. You will have to cut down many of these trees.

B.

The Gerundive is used idiomatically after *cūrō* (*I take care that*), *suscipīō* (*I undertake*), *lōcō* (*I give out under contract*), *condūcō* (*I contract to do*), and other Verbs (of giving, receiving, &c.): *cūrābō flōrēs mittendōs I will take care that flowers are sent*; *suscipīō rem iudicandam I undertake to decide the matter*; *agrum arandum dēdimus we have given land to plough*.

22. Let him take-care that the bridge is repaired.
23. We have received these suppliants to protect.
24. Who has undertaken to build the house?
25. The consul has *given out* the temple to Mārcus to
build *under contract*.
26. Why wast thou unwilling to contract to repair the
temple?
27. I have undertaken to repair the walls for much less.
28. I had given a letter to my slave to write yesterday.
29. I will take-care that the army is levied forthwith.
30. I had contracted to make the helmets.
31. Who has undertaken to plant the trees so cheap?
32. We will take-care to report the matter.
33. We will give-out-the-contract for the building of the
house to the contractors.

34. Who will undertake to bind the lion ?

35. I have undertaken to rear both the boy and the girl.

The Future Infinitives. Historic Infinitive.

For the *Future Infinitive Active* the Future Participle is used: *mūliërem crēdidit mōritūram he believed that the woman would die*; *nūntiāt hostēs ābitūrōs he reports that the enemy will go away*.

essē is sometimes inserted.

Note that the Participle must agree with its Subject, as *mōritūram* with *mūliërem* in the example above.

The *Future Infinitive Passive* is expressed:

(1) By using *irī* with the Supine in *-um*.

This form cannot be used when the subject of the Infinitive is the same as that of the Finite Verb, as then there is nothing for the Supine to govern; hence, *urbs captum irī vidēbātur (the city seemed to be going to be captured)* is bad Latin; *urbem* would be correct.

(2) By using *fōrē* (Fut. Infin. of *essē*), followed by *ūt*, with the Subjunctive Present or Imperfect, according to the Sequence of Tenses: *dicit fōrē ūt urbs cāpiātūr he says that (it will be that) the city will be captured*; *dixit fōrē ūt urbs cāpērētūr he said that the city would be captured*.

The construction *fōrē ūt*, &c., must also be used with *Intransitive* Verbs which have no Future Participle: *nōn pūō fōrē ūt nōtescat I do not think it will become known*.

(3) The *Future Perfect Infinitive Passive* is expressed by using *fōrē* with the Passive Participle: *crēdit urbem captam fōrē he believes the city will have been captured*.

The **Future Infinitive** must always be used with Verbs of **hoping** and **promising**.

HISTORIC INFINITIVE.—In historical descriptions the Present Infinitive is frequently used instead of a Present or Perfect Indicative: *hostēs fūgērē, Rōmānī sēqui the enemy fly, the Romans pursue*.

54.

1. Scipio hopes to conquer Hannibal at Zāma.
2. My father said that she would be at Rome in three days.
3. He declares that those things which we desire will happen.
4. It is certain that she will marry the barber's son.
5. Your grandfather promised to give me a fine horse.
6. Then the enemy gave-way, our-men pressed-on.
7. I believe the pirates will be executed at daybreak.
8. I promise that thou shalt not be hurt.
9. The general *says* that the victory would *not* have been won by Mārcellus himself.
10. I told you that the women would scream.
11. Then the sea begins-to-roar, the masts creak, and the sailors cry out terrified.
12. The consul believes that the designs of Catiline will fail.
13. I cannot believe that this tiger will grow tame.
14. He prophesies that the sun will never shine again.
15. She promised to send the robe in two hours.
16. Then, when the lions roar, the maiden begins-to-tremble.
17. Ye say that ye hope to capture the citadel.
18. We knew that the lions would roar all night.
19. Then suddenly flames shine in the sky, a great roar is heard, and ashes fall from-above like rain.
20. Why do you suppose that the people will mourn Caesar's death?
21. The trumpet gives (*cānō*) the signal, and our soldiers rush forth in a headlong charge; some of the enemy are killed, others run away.

Questions.

In asking Simple Questions, the Interrogative Particles, *-nē* (always appended to some word), *nōnnē*, *num*, are very often used.

-*ně* implies nothing as to the nature of the answer expected. *audisně ? do you hear ?*

nōnně expects the answer *Yes*. *nōnně audis ! don't you hear ?*

num expects the answer *No*. *num audis ? you don't hear, do you ?*

Alternative Questions may be put in any of the following forms :

First Clause.

Second Clause.

<i>nōstī mē (no particle)</i>	}	<i>ān (or anně) ignōrās ?</i>
<i>ūtūm mē nōstī</i>		
<i>nōstī-ně mē</i>		

Or not ? is expressed by *annōn* (sometimes *necně*) :
crēdīs mīhī annōn ? do you believe me or not ?

55.

1. Art thou Scipio's son or not ?
2. Dost thou not see that the man is mad ?
3. Do you think that I am a fool or not ?
4. Will he confess or deny his crime ?
5. Will he sup at home or in the country ?
6. Is he a fool or mad ?
7. Is Mārcus a skilful general or not ?
8. Did he who slew his master enjoy peace ?
9. Did I not tell thee that thou wouldst never be Consul ?
10. Will Gāius remain at Rome, or go to see his father at (*to*) Philippi ?
11. Is it like-a-wise-man to pretend to be mad ?
12. Was Brutus really mad, or did he pretend ?
13. Is the queen dead or not ?
14. Is not Queen Anne dead ?
15. Does it become a Roman citizen to be beaten with rods ?

16. Must I tell thee that again, or not?
17. Can a slave, then, become a Roman citizen?
18. Is not disgrace more shameful than death?
19. Am I to be despised by a barbarian?
20. Do wise men encourage virtue or not?

THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

(See *New Latin Primer*, 213 ff.)

N.B.—Before attempting the exercises that follow, the student should thoroughly master the Rules for the Sequence of Tenses, *New Latin Primer*, 226—232.

Substantival Clauses (A).

The following Exercise deals with Sentences of the two following types:

(1) Sentences containing Substantival Clauses, introduced by *quōd*, meaning *the fact that*: *quōd spirō tūm est the-fact-that I breathe (my breathing) is due-to-you.*

(2) Dependent Questions: *quid fūtūrum sīt rōgō I ask what is going-to-happen.*

Note that in translating the Dependent Question *the Subjunctive Mood must always be used.*

56.

1. The-fact-that he has come concerns thee much.
2. That Verres has been condemned will injure us much.
3. I ask thee what thou art doing.
4. We were asking whence he had come.
5. I shall ask why he has returned.
6. Do not ask what I have said.
7. The-fact-that we have asked is of great importance.
8. That thou grieveest, that-thing rouses grief in (*to*) me also.
9. They were wondering why thou wast unwilling.

10. Did he not ask whether I was willing to go?
11. Ask whether he is able or not.
12. Ask whether anyone has brought help.
13. That no one has died, that-thing rouses my (*to me*) wonderment.
14. The fact that he has written in-no-way excuses him.
15. They will ask how-great thy debt is.
16. Is it lawful to ask how-many ye are?
17. I was wondering how-many ye were.
18. He had asked what I was willing to do.
19. I have been asked why you are unwilling to return.
20. Do not ask why he did it.
21. Has he not asked which of the two brothers wrote the letter?

Substantival Clauses (B).

The following Exercise deals with sentences of the two following types :

(1) Sentences containing Substantival Clauses introduced by *ūt* and *nē* (*always with Subjunctive*) as Objects of Verbs of *entreating, commanding, advising, persuading*, and as Subjects to *est, accidit*, &c. : *pētō ā tē ūt ābēās (nē ābēās) I ask you to go away (not to go away): accidit ūt ādessēt it happened that he was present.*

N.B.—(a) In English, Verbs of *commanding, entreating, &c.*, are followed by *to* and the Infinitive (*I ask you to come*); but their Latin equivalents (except *rūbēō* and *vētō*) **must never be used with the Infinitive**. See examples above.

(b) *rūbēō* and *vētō* are exceptions to this rule, and take **Inf.** and **Acc.** : *rūssit eum hōc fācērē he bade him do this; vētūt eum hōc fācērē he bade him not to do this.*

(2) Sentences introduced by *nē* or *nē . . . nōn*, expressing the Object of a Verb of *fearing*: *tīmēō nē mōrīātūr I fear he may (or will) die (or is dying); tīmēō nē*

lātrō nōn cāpiātūr *I fear the brigand will not be captured.*

N.B.—With *vērēōr* (and sometimes with *mētūō* and *tīmēō*) *ūt* is found instead of *nē* . . . *nōn* : *vērēōr ūt mē diligās I am afraid you do not love me.* But *nōn vērēōr ūt* is never found.

57.

1. I ask thee to come.
2. I asked thee to come.
3. I ask thee not to come.
4. I shall ask thee not to come.
5. He advises me to go away.
6. He persuaded me to hear the matter.
7. We will order him to be-present.
8. I fear he may come. I fear he is coming.
9. I fear he will come. I fear he does not love me.
10. He was afraid I should desert the cause of Liberty.
11. He begged that I would not do this.
12. Art thou not afraid that thou wilt be punished?
13. Do not advise him to seek the consulship.
14. Why did he order me to attack the camp?
15. We shall strive to win the case.
16. They *have* asked me to come.
17. Thou *hast* advised him to tell-a-lie.
18. He *has* ordered the tenth legion to remain in camp.
19. He ordered the ninth legion to charge.
20. He was afraid they would not help.
21. Advise him not to eat too much.
22. Bid him sing; I fear, however, that he will refuse.
23. I advised him never (*not ever*) to desert his father.
24. Entreat him not to give it to anyone.
25. The general ordered that no one should leave the camp.
26. Strive to forget nothing.
27. ~~Strive~~ to injure nobody.

28. I advised him to admit nobody unknown.

29. Bid them bring no arms.

30. Endeavour never to desert thy duty.

31. I told him not to go out-of-doors.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

Temporal Clauses (A).

In Temporal clauses

ut in the sense of *when* always takes the **Indicative**.

cum in the sense of *when* can also take the Indicative, if the connection between the main clause and the dependent clause is *solely* a *time-connection*: *cum iam rēgressi sunt, sōl occidēbāt the sun was setting when they returned.*

But **cum** *when* almost always takes the **Subjunctive**, because there is generally more than a mere time-connection between the two clauses: *cum iam ad mūrōs adprōpinquārēmūs, portās vidīmūs āpertās when we were now nearing the walls we saw the gates were open.* Here **cum** suggests the meaning *when and since*.

WHEN? (interrogative) should be translated by **quando**.

Cum in the sense of *since the time when* takes **Indicative**: *centum annī sunt cum dictātōr fuit it is a hundred years since he was dictator.*

Dum takes the **Indicative** if its meaning is purely **Temporal**. In the sense of

WHILE: usually with the **Present**, whatever the time of the Principal Clause: *incidit in Scyllam dum vult vitare Charybdim he fell into Scylla while desiring to avoid Charybdis.*

SO LONG AS : with the Present, the Imperfect (sometimes the Perfect), and the Future, according to the time of the Principal Clause : *dum ānīmā est, spēs est, so long as there is life, there is hope.*

UNTIL : with the Perfect of Past time and the Future Perfect of Future time : *mānsit in cōsiliō dum sēnātūs dimissus est he persisted in his plan until the senate broke up.*

For **dum** with Subjunctive see Ex. 70.

58.

1. When the cat is away, then the mice play.
2. When she wept I was not able to refuse.
3. When the sun has set, then we see the stars.
4. When do you think that he will come?
5. When she saw the child perishing, she shrieked.
6. We fought until we conquered.
7. As-often-as we saw him we used to laugh.
8. When he had drunk the wine, he fell on the ground.
9. I shall wait-for him until the sun has (*shall have*) set.
10. When at length he arrived at Rome, he died.
11. When you (*shall*) have heard the delights of the place,
you also will wish to visit it.
12. When we were at length setting-out, the sun rose.
13. When I was sleeping yesterday a dream came to me.
14. When the old man had said this, we too wept.
15. It is not a year since he died.
16. How many days is it since the ship sank?
17. It is two days since the storm was-raging.
18. It is not now many days since he wrote to me.
19. While he was seeking a foe, he found a friend.
20. I waited in the senate-house until Cicero began to
speak.
21. So long as I (*shall*) live, I will never betray either my
friends or my country.

22. While the Sabines were gazing at the spectacle, the Romans suddenly seized their women.
23. So long as Antōnius was speaking, nobody interrupted him.
24. Until I met you, nobody had spoken to me about this matter.
25. So long as we saw that he breathed, we all believed that he would escape death.
26. So long as you remain at Rome, it will be necessary to obey the laws of the state.
27. So long as I was a child, I was-devoted-to childish-things.
28. While we were thus in-suspense, suddenly a messenger arrives, [saying] that Janicūlum has been seized by the enemy.
29. All these things happened (impf.) while I was staying with (*ip̄ūd*) Atticus at Corinth.
30. So long as we are prosperous, we shall not lack friends.
31. Until at length the sun set, we firmly trusted that they would succour us.
32. While he was trying to stab the man unawares, he was himself struck with an axe by the man's (*illē*) son.

Temporal Clauses (B).—Modal Clauses.

1. **Antequam** and **postquam**, when referring to past time, take the Perfect or Pluperfect Indicative ; but they take the latter tense *only when the length of the interval is expressed*: *vidi ěum postquam Rōmam vēnit* ; but *vidi ěum bīdūō postquam Rōmam vēnērāt*. (For the Subjunctive with *antequam* and *postquam* see Ex. 68.)

2. In **Modal** clauses :

ūt, *as*, always takes the **Indicative**.

quāsi, *as if*, always takes the **Subjunctive**.

59.

1. The messenger arrived after I (had) answered the ambassadors.
2. I saw her at-the-house-of Livia two-days before she set-out for Rhodes.
3. He arrived home after we departed.
4. The town was burned two days after it was captured.
5. As thou hast sown so wilt thou reap.
6. He spoke as if he loved me.
7. He speaks as if he were dying.
8. The crime was discovered four days after he died.
9. He was seized while he was raising the dagger.
10. As thou lovest me, come to help me.
11. He talks as if he were mad.
12. Do not shudder as if you had seen (perf.) a ghost.
13. He published the book two years after he wrote it.
14. The enemy attacked us while were dining.
15. [In proportion] as the path is steeper, so is it shorter.
16. She shrieked as if she felt pain.
17. After we had set-out a storm suddenly arose.

Indicative of Indefinite Frequency.

The best Latin writers use the INDICATIVE of events *frequently occurring*, corresponding to the English *ever*. So with *quisquīs*, *quicumque* *whoever*, *quī* (= *quisquīs*), and with *sī* in the sense of *if ever* (i.e., *whenever*): *stōmāchā-bātur sēnex sī quīd aspērius dixeram* *the old man used to get angry if I (had) said anything rather harsh.*

Some writers, however, use the Subjunctive.

60.

1. Whatever he had planted used to grow easily.
2. If he had come in time, we used to play.
3. Wherever they have found the hare they kill her.
4. If he (had) killed the bird running, we used to laugh.

5. Whithersoever he had fled we used to follow.
6. If we do not find (perf.) a fox in the wood, we go further.
7. If he says (perf.) anything silly, all laugh.
8. Whatever he asked (plupf.) I used to give.
9. Wherever he had come, the citizens used to receive him gladly.
10. Whenever he had caught a bird, his sister used to release it.
11. If ever they laughed (plupf.), he used to be angry.
12. If ever we heard (plupf.) his name, we used to laugh.
13. If ever he shaves his beard, we do not recognise him.
14. Wherever he lives he always finds friends.
15. If they had asked too much, we used to refuse.
16. Whoever first arrives (perf.) at the goal, receives the prize.

Consecutive and Final Clauses.

In **Consecutive** clauses translate

<i>so that not</i>	} by {	<i>ut nōn</i>
<i>so that no-one</i>		<i>ut nēmō</i>
<i>so that never</i>		<i>ut nunquam</i>
&c.		&c.

Nē is, however, often found in Consecutive clauses : see Ex. 85.

But in **Final** clauses

<i>(in order) that not</i>	} must be expressed by {	<i>nē</i>
<i>(in order) that no-one</i>		<i>nē quis</i>
<i>(in order) that never</i>		<i>nē umquam</i>
&c.		&c.

N.B.—Remember that in English *that* and *so that* may introduce either a Consecutive or a Final clause, and the sense will often be your only guide to a distinction.

For **Causal** Sentences see Ex. 69.

61.

1. He was so worn-out that he seemed about-to-die.
2. He is so weak that he cannot speak.
3. I write to (*ad*) you, in order that you may write to me.
4. He wrote to me that I might not leave Rome.
5. He struck the horse with his spear so strongly that the planks resounded.
6. Ask the master to tell you the story of the Trojan horse.
7. I am so ignorant that I have never heard it.
8. These things are so difficult that I cannot understand them.
9. He is so sullen that no-one loves him.
10. Ostriches hide their eggs that this animal may not find them.
11. The ostrich lifted his foot to strike the man.
12. Tithonus begged this,—that he might never die.
13. I say this that nobody may deny it hereafter.
14. He said this that ye might not be willing to help me.
15. The sun is so bright that no one can look-at it.
16. He hid himself in an oak that no one might find him.
17. He turned-away his face that he might not see his daughter die.
18. A statue of the hero was made that his name might never be forgotten.
19. Take care not to (*lest you*) write too fast.
20. He is so talkative that he learns nothing.
21. She took up the child that he might not die.
22. Study literature [when] a boy, that you may not be despised when you have grown-up (perf. subjunct.).

Consecutive Sentences (additional).

The following phrases require special attention :

Tantum ābest ūt mortūi sint ūt hōdīe ambūlantes vidērim, so far are they from being dead, that I saw them

walking to-day. (N.B.—*ăbest* (*ăberăt*, *abfuit*) in such a sentence is *impersonal*.)

Dignūs est ūt laudētūr *he is worthy of being praised.*

In eō est ūt mōriātūr *he is on the point of dying*; **in eō ērāmūs ūt** spem omnem āmittērēmūs *we were on the point of losing all hope.*

Pŭēr pinguīōr est quam ūt vivāt *the boy is too fat to live.*

Nōn is (tālīs) sum ūt āmicum prōdam *I am not the (sort of) man to betray a friend.*

62.

1. So far from weeping, ye laugh.
2. I was so far from dying I killed my enemy.
3. He was on the point of beginning to sing.
4. He is not worthy of carrying off a prize.
5. She is too ugly to marry.
6. He was too wise to buy a thing so useless.
7. Thou art not the man to tremble-at a ghost.
8. He was too drunk to stand.
9. So far were you from dancing that you were not able to stand.
10. He is worthy of being made dictator.
11. The cold is too severe for me to bear it.
12. It is not yet on the point of freezing.
13. I am not the man to believe such a tale.
14. The night was too dark for one to be able to distinguish friends and foes.
15. I am too glad to be moved by any grief.

Consecutive Clauses with quīn.

Quīn (equivalent to *quī nōn, ūt nōn, tālīs ūt nōn*) is very freely used to introduce Consecutive Clauses after negative or quasi-Negative (Interrogative) Principal Clauses. The Sequence of Tenses must be observed: *haud dūbium est quīn mōriātūr there is no doubt that he is dying*; *numquam*

ēum vidēō quīn rōgem *I never see him without asking*; nēmo ērāt quīn dōlērēt *there was no one that did not lament*; quīd causae ērāt quīn vēnīrēs? *what reason was there for your not coming?* faciēre nōn possum quīn scribam *I cannot help writing*; fiērī nōn pōtest quīn *it cannot be but that, &c.*

63.

1. It cannot be but that the earth is round.
2. There was no doubt that the king was dying.
3. There was no doubt that he was likely-to-conquer them.
4. It cannot be but that he has already crossed the Alps.
5. Who doubts that he will come?
6. There is no doubt that the boy was extremely pleasant.
7. There was no doubt that they had fled.
8. No one sees her without weeping.
9. There will be no state that does not yield.
10. There was no soldier who was not wounded.
11. I never had an opportunity without writing.
12. Who can hear such deeds without praising the man?
13. There is none of these things that does not perish.
14. What of all these things is there that does not delight us?
15. No one came to Messāna without seeing these things.

Verbs of Preventing and Declining.

Verbs of *Preventing* and *Declining* take **nē**; Verbs of *Preventing* take also **quō minūs**.

impēdiōr nē (*also quō minūs*) plūrā dicam *I am hindered from saying more* (so that I should say no more); nē sententiam dicērēt rēcūsāvit *he refused to pronounce an opinion*; cāvē nē titūbēs *take care that you do not stumble*.

After Negative or quasi-Negative clauses **quīn** may be used; nōn rēcūsō quīn crimīnībūs respondēam *I do not refuse to answer the charges*.

64.

1. Why dost thou hinder me from saying more (pl.)?

2. Has he not refused to reply?
3. He did not refuse to help me.
4. I was prevented from coming sooner.
5. The general scarcely restrained the soldiers from flying.
6. Take care the dog does not bite you.
7. I shall not refuse to write, but I am prevented from doing anything more (*amplius*).
8. They took care not to be seen.
9. What prevents me from killing thee?
10. The storm prevented us from collecting the bodies.
11. Do not refuse to pardon me.
12. I shall take care not to stumble.
13. What prevented you from obeying the general's orders?
14. Nothing shall prevent me from returning home as quickly as possible.
15. Do you mean to say (*nun*) he has refused to order the soldiers to advance?
16. We had taken care not to ask him for anything more (*amplius*).
17. If anything prevents me from coming, I will write to you what I am doing.
18. Did he not refuse to ride through the city, for-fear (*ne*) it might be turned to a reproach against-him?
19. Unless anything prevents me from writing, you will receive a letter to-morrow morning.
20. Take care not to prevent him from returning as early as possible.

The Subjunctive in Relative Clauses.

(For contrasted uses of the Indicative see *New Latin Primer*, 400—412.)

The **Subjunctive** is used in five kinds of Relative Sentences:

1. When the Relative involves an idea of **purpose** (Eng. *to* with Infinitive): *scribēbāt orātīōnēs quās alīī dicērent* *he*

wrote speeches for other people to deliver (which other people were to deliver).

2. Where an idea of **result** is involved (Eng. *such as, such as to, to*): *nōn* is est qui his rēbūs ūtātur *he is not such a man as would use these things (not the man to use these things)*.

N. B.—The Relative must be used in the following sentences.

65.

1. He builds houses for others to dwell in.
2. He sent me the man for me to punish.
3. Give me a book to read.
4. I am not the man to desert a friend.
5. Are you the sort of man to strike a woman?
6. I have not a sword to use.
7. They sent him wine to drink.
8. He complained that there was (inf.) not another world to conquer.
9. He was not the man to yield to fear.
10. They are the sort of men to use treachery.
11. I have nothing to eat.
12. I am not the man to despise even bread.
13. I begged him to send me one whom I could trust.
14. I believe he is the sort of man to kill his father, if angry.
15. It is not a dagger that thou canst use.
16. Art thou the man to do so-great a-deed?
17. He said he was not the man to do anything of-the-sort.
18. You ought to give him an axe to use in cutting-down trees.
19. Never will I give (*trādō*) him power to abuse by (*in*) overthrowing the state.
20. He is not the sort-of-man we ought to support.

The Subjunctive in Relative Clauses (*continued*).

3. The **Subjunctive** is used when a notion of **character** or **class** is involved: *māiōrā dēliquērunt quam quībūs ignōscam they have committed offences greater than I pardon (too great for me to pardon).*

Hence the Subjunctive is also used with **est quī, sunt quī**: *there is a person to—, there are persons to—*: *sunt quī dicant some people say*; and with Negatives: *nēmo est quī dicat, there is no one to say, nēmo est quī nōn dicat, there is no one not to say (who does not say).*

N.B.—The Relative must be used in the following sentences.

66.

1. He is too fat to run easily.
2. She is too kind to refuse.
3. There were some who laughed.
4. The cold was too great to bear.
5. There was no one who did not believe her guilty.
6. The feat will be too hard for you to perform.
7. There is no one that does not marvel at thy strength.
8. He said things too silly for me to believe.
9. There were people who hated him.
10. There was no one but was surprised.
11. The river is too broad for you to jump across.
12. I was too cautious to trust him.
13. He is too rash to be trusted.
14. The crime was too great to be pardoned.
15. He speaks too angrily to persuade.

The Subjunctive in Relative Clauses (*continued*).

The **Subjunctive** is also used—

4. With **quī quidem, quī mōdō**, when the **class** or **character** of anything **limits** a previous assertion: *omnium*

oratorum quos quidem ego cognoverim acutissimus est Sertorius, *of all the speakers—of such, that is to say, as I know—Sertorius is the sharpest*; nemo servus qui modo tolerabili condicione sit servitus, *no slave who is (i.e., no slave provided he be) in a tolerable state of slavery.*

5. When the Relative involves an idea of **cause**: fuit mirifica vigilantia qui suo toto consulatu somnum non viderit, *he has shown marvellous wakefulness, since he has not seen sleep (i.e., slept a wink) in his entire consulship.* So, **ut** qui, **quippe** qui, **utpote** qui.

N.B.—The Relative must be used in the following sentences.

67.

1. No man who is free at least, can tolerate such things.
2. They fought bravely, for men who had marched so many miles.
3. Do not call any slave base, if at least he is honest.
4. He spoke eloquently for one who is a Lacedaemonian.
5. He jumps best of all at least who are here.
6. This book delights me most (*maxime*) of all (at least) that I have read lately.
7. He walks wonderfully for one who is lame.
8. They arrived tired-out, seeing that they had eaten nothing for eleven hours.
9. He is in no way loveable, since he always consults his own-interests only (*say for-himself alone*).
10. He is doubtless poor, inasmuch as he has squandered his patrimony.
11. Of all lands—at least, of all that I know, this is the most beautiful.
12. No one will deny this—no one, that is, who saw him dying

The Subjunctive in Temporal Clauses.

The **Subjunctive** is used with Temporal Conjunctions of events **expected** and **intended** to occur.

With **dum until**: *expectatē dum dictatōr fiāt, wait till a dictator can be appointed*; *rēus dum cōsulerentur patrēs in fōrō rētentus est, the accused was detained in the Forum to allow time for the senators to be consulted.*

With **antē quam, priūs quam**: *collem priūs quam sentiātūr commūnit, he fortifies the hill before he can be perceived.*

The Subjunctive is sometimes used to express *Purpose*: (1) with *dōnēc, quoad, until*, (2) with *dum while*: *rēx dum rēcens terror essēt, exercitū ad urbem misit, the king sent an army to the city while the panic was (should be) fresh.*

68.

1. Do not go away until I (have) come.
2. Seize the hill before the enemy arrive thither.
3. Wait till the clouds roll-by.
4. They will not take the town before winter comes-on.
5. Take care to write before you come.
6. Rout them while they still hesitate.
7. Let us set-out while the sky is clear.
8. We-must-sail before the storms catch us.
9. I therefore waited at Rome till my wound was healed.
10. Strike him before he lifts his hand.
11. They killed the sentinel before he could see them.
12. I shall stay at Athens to give you time to return from Sparta.
13. He sent forces to surprise them while they were still in camp.
14. We wait for the boar till he rushes out of the covert.
15. Do not shoot your arrow till you see the bird fly.

The Subjunctive and Indicative in Causal Clauses.

The **Indicative** is used with **quōd, quā, &c.**, if they simply give the **real** reason : *dōlēt mihī quōd stōmāchārīs I am pained because you are angry.*

But the **Subjunctive** is used with them if they give the **alleged** or **supposed** reason : *Sōcrātēs accūsātūs est quōd iuventūtem corrupērēt Socrates was accused of corrupting (on the alleged ground that he corrupted) the youth.*

N.B.—The alleged reason is not necessarily a *false* one.

Hence it is used after **nōn** : *nōn idcirco dimisi quōd ēis suscēnsērem sēd quōd ēōrum mē suppdēbāt I did not send them away because I was annoyed with them (supposed reason, Subj.), but because I was somewhat ashamed of them (real reason, Ind.).*

Cum in the sense of *since* or *because* always takes the **Subjunctive**.

69.

1. I grieve not because you say these things, but because you say them truthfully (adj.).
2. I shall charge him with corrupting the senators.
3. He used to walk-about at-night because (as he said) he could not sleep.
4. They fly, not because they fear, but in order to return.
5. He has charged me with deserting my father.
6. Come to me, not because I ask, but because thou thyself wishest.
7. He begs for bread on the ground that he has eaten nothing to-day.
8. He was accused of squandering his master's goods.
9. Art thou pained because I have opposed thee?
10. I blamed him for having failed our cause.

11. Are ye not ashamed of injuring the innocent?
12. He suddenly departed because (as he said) the hour was late.
13. He says this, not because he believes it, but because he is a liar.
14. You do not understand, because you have not heard the story.
15. Do you ask because you wish to learn?
16. He said this not because he loved the poor, but because he was a thief.
17. They were thrown into prison on the ground that they had conspired against the king.
18. I do it, not because I am compelled, but because it pleases me so to spend my time.

Contrasted uses of **Dum** with Indicative and Subjunctive.

Dum takes the Indicative if its meaning is purely Temporal. (See Ex. 58.)

(a) **WHILE**, usually with the Present, whatever the time of the Principal Clause.

(b) **SO LONG AS**, with the Present, the Imperfect (sometimes the Perfect), and the Future, according to the time of the Principal Clause.

(c) **UNTIL**, with the Perfect of Past time and the Future Perfect of Future time: *mānsit in cōsiliō dum sēnātus dimissus est* *he persisted in his plan until the senate broke up*; *mānebit in cōsiliō dum sēnātus dimissus erit* *he will persist*, &c.

Dum is used with the **Subjunctive** (Negative *nē*):

(a) In sense of *until* when **purpose** is implied.

(b) Sometimes in sense of *while* when **purpose** is implied.

(c) When it means *provided that*: *odderint dum metuant let them hate, provided that* (so long as) they fear. So **dum** **mōdō**.

70.

1. While it rains we shall remain at-home.
2. He suddenly died while he was riding.
3. I do not refuse, provided that you come with me.
4. While he tried to seize the shadow he dropped the meat.
5. He remained on the hill till the battle was ended.
6. I will not pardon him until he has confessed his fault.
7. Do not charge until he sounds the signal.
8. Provided that thou leavest me not, I will endure all things.
9. Let us play until the cat returns.
10. Why did he not remain-silent till the consul had departed?
11. While there is life (*ānīmā*) there will be hope.
12. So long as thou prosperest thou wilt have many friends.
13. Do not bring me the hot water till I call you.
14. So long as you are faithful nothing can disturb me.
15. He says he will not cease to say these things so long as he lives.

Conditional Statements.

A full statement of the Conditional Sentence will be found in the *New Latin Primer*, 234—244. The leading facts are reproduced below.

A Conditional Statement consists of two clauses, the one stating the Condition, and called the **Protasis**, and the other stating the Consequence, and called the **Apodosis**. Thus in *sī bonūs est, fēlix est* *if he is good, he is happy*, *sī bonūs est* is the Protasis, and *fēlix est* is the Apodosis.

N.B.—*Nisi* except takes the same constructions as *sī*.

There are three types of Conditional Statements, according to the forms of the Verb which are used in them :

(A) In which the *Indicative* is used.

(B) In which *Primary tenses of the Subjunctive* are used.

(C) In which *Secondary tenses of the Subjunctive* are used.

The Protasis and Apodosis must not consist of forms which are inconsistent with each other. Thus :

Apodosis.

Protasis.

Indicative requires **Indicative.**

A **Primary** Tense of the „ a **Primary** Tense of the
Subjunctive Subjunctive.

A **Secondary** Tense of „ a **Secondary** Tense of the
the Subjunctive the Subjunctive.

(A) INDICATIVE IN CONDITIONAL STATEMENTS.—If we use the Indicative in a Conditional Statement, we imply nothing as to the occurrence or non-occurrence of the events.

Any Tense of the Indicative may be used in either Protasis or Apodosis, if it gives an intelligible sense :

sī rūbēs, ibō *If you are ordering me (now), I will go ;*
sī rūbēbīs, ibō *If you order me (in the future), I will go ;*
sī Athēnis ērāt, Cōrīnthum vēniēt *If he was at Athens,*
he will come to Corinth ;
sī peccāvī, paenītēt *If I have done wrong, I am (now)*
sorry.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONDITIONAL STATEMENTS.—If we use the Subjunctive in a Conditional Statement, we treat the events *as if they were imaginary suppositions*, and we imply¹ that they *do not occur*.

Such imaginary suppositions are expressed by a different set of tenses according as they relate (B) to the Future or (C) to the Present and Past.

(B) PRIMARY TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.—These express imaginary suppositions relating to the Future.

¹ Generally, but not always. Sentences like the following show that non-fulfilment of the condition cannot always be implied : nōnne Stōicus subsīlūis-ēt, sī vespā ēum mōmordissēt ? *would not a Stoic have jumped, if a wasp had stung him ?*

sī interrōgēs, respondēam *If you were to ask me, I should answer.*

sī peccāvērīs, paenitēāt *If you should do wrong (should have done wrong), you would be sorry.*

(C) SECONDARY TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.—These express imaginary suppositions relating to (a) *the Present* or (b) *the Past*. Such suppositions are *known*¹ to be *contrary to the fact*, and the events which they suppose are *known not to be occurring* or *not to have occurred*.

(a) *Imaginary Suppositions relating to the Present Time :*

Protasis.

Apodosis.

sī vivērēt,

If he were (now) living,

rēgnārēt.

he would be (now) reigning.

sī vixissēt,

If he had lived,

rēgnāssēt.

(continued alive),

he would have reigned.

☞ The Imperfect and Pluperfect can be combined in the same sentence, each tense carrying its proper meaning : sī vixissēt, rēgnārēt *If he had lived on (to the present day), he would be (now) reigning.*

(b) *Imaginary Suppositions relating to Past Time :*

Protasis.

Apodosis.

sī vivērēt,

If he had (then) been living,

rēgnārēt.

he would have been reigning.

sī vixissēt,

If he had (then) lived,

rēgnāssēt.

he would have reigned.

The difference of meaning in the *same tense* when used in sentences of the types (a) and (b) must be carefully observed :

Imperfect.

(a) admirārēris Caesārem sī hōdiē vivērēt *You would admire Caesar if he were alive to-day.*

¹ See note (1), p. 105.

- (b) admirāturis Caesārem sī illō tempore vivērēs *You would have admired (been admiring) Caesar if you had been living then.*

Pluperfect.

- (a) sī tē hōdiē culpāssem, malē fēcissem *If I had found fault with you to-day, I should have done wrong.*
 (b) sī Cicerō Caesārem culpāset, malē fēcisset *If Cicero had found fault with Caesar, he would have done wrong.*

TRANSLATION OF CONDITIONAL STATEMENTS. — The forms of the English and Latin Conditional Statements by no means correspond to each other, and consequently the ordinary English translations of the Conditional Statement do not properly represent the Latin. The following differences in idiom should be carefully noticed :

(A) *Indicative :*

If I err, I will own it.

{ sī peccābō, fātēbōr ; or
 { sī peccāverō, fātēbōr.

(B) *Subjunctive, Primary Tenses :*

If I erred (in the future), I should own it.

{ sī peccem, fātēār ; or
 { sī peccāverim, fātēār

(C) *Subjunctive, Secondary Tenses :*

If I erred (now), I should own it (now).

sī peccārem, fātērēr.—*Imperf.* referring to *Present Time.*

If I had erred, I should have owned it.

sī peccāssem, fassūs essem.—*Pluperfect.*

sī peccārem, fātērēr.—*Imperf.* referring to *Past Time* (continuing action).

The following is a Tabulation of the normal forms of the Conditional Sentence according to Time Divisions. Sentences in which the Indicative is employed are marked (A) ; those in which the Subjunctive is employed are

marked (B). It will be observed that there is a marked contrast in the *tone* and *force* of the English equivalents of these two classes, which may be an assistance to the student in reproducing the Latin.

1. Future Time.

- (A) *sī iūbēbīs* (or *iūssērīs*, fut. indic.) *ibō*.

If you (shall) order (or shall have ordered) me, I shall go.

- (B) *sī iūbēās* (or *iūssērīs*, perf. subj.), *eam*.

If you should order (or should have ordered) me, I should go.

2. Present Time.

- (A) *sī vivīt*, *gaudēō*.

If he is alive, I am glad.

- (B) *si vivērēt*, *gaudērem*.

If he were alive, I should be glad.

- (A) *sī pūgnae sūperfūit* (Perf. Proper), *gaudēō*

If he has survived the battle (and is now alive), I am glad.

- (B) *sī pūgnae sūperfūissēt*, *gaudērem*.

If he had survived the battle (and were now alive), I should be glad.

3. Past Time.

- (A) *sī itā ēgīt*, *mālē fēcīt* (Aoristic-Perfect).

If he did so, he did wrong.

- (B) *sī itā ēgissēt*, *mālē fēcissēt*.

If he had done so, he would have done wrong.

- (A) *sī itā āgēbāt*, *mālē faciēbāt*.

If he was doing so, he was doing wrong.

- (B) *sī itā āgērēt*, *mālē faciērēt*.

If he had been doing so, he would have been doing wrong.

71.

1. If you are ill, I am sorry (*dōlēō*).
2. If you were not here [now], I should be sorry.
3. If you [then] believed this, you were-wrong.
4. If you had come, I should have seen you.
5. If anyone had heard Demosthenes, he would never have forgotten it.
6. If he comes, we shall see him.
7. If he were to sing, I should be-amazed.
8. Unless he said this, he did not speak the truth (*true-things*).
9. If he had said this, I should have believed him.
10. If he were not dying, I should not be weeping.
11. If he is not dying, why dost thou weep?
12. If he came to Rome, why did he not seek me?
13. If I were king, I would not act so
14. If he was king, why did you not obey him?
15. If the sun were shining, the birds would be singing.
16. Would they not sing, even if the sun were not shining?
17. I should not have believed it, if I had not seen it.
18. If you had been in Caesar's place, what would you have done?
19. If the god has spoken, we must not disobey.
20. If Brutus had been a fool, he would not have understood the god's words.
21. If he is a god, dost thou dare to resist him?
22. If he asked (were to ask) me, I should reply nothing.
23. Whether thou killest him or art killed, I shall praise thee.
24. If the king were to die, his son would receive the kingdom.
25. If he were here, he would marvel at your skill.
26. If Antony is in the senate-house, let him rise and speak.
27. If the bridge broke, we should fall into the water.
28. If the bridge broke, how did the rest cross the river?

29. If she sings, you will be charmed.
30. If I sang, you would run away.
31. How would he be able to cut it, unless he had a knife?
32. Do not refuse to sup with (*apud*) me, unless perchance you are ill.
33. If I knew (now), I would tell you.
34. If he died, I should grieve.
35. If he had *not* been-ill so many years, he would now be much stronger.
36. Would he not have come, if he had been able?
37. He would not now be living, if I had *not* saved him.
38. I should not [now] be able to live, unless Atticus were with me.
39. He would have reached the goal first, if the course had been longer.
40. I would do it (now), if I could.

A Conditional Clause is sometimes introduced by *qui* or *quicumque*,=*si quis*: *qui haec videret, urbem captam diceret* *anyone who (if anyone) had seen this, would have said that the town was taken.*

Use the Relative in the following sentences :

41. If anyone had refused, he would have been thrown into prison.
42. Anyone who had slept on that night, would have died of cold.
43. I should have seized anyone whom I had seen.
44. Anyone who had done anything of this kind would have done wrong.
45. I should not have recognised anyone that I saw (had seen).

Concessive Clauses.

Concessive Sentences.—In these the Indicative or the Subjunctive is used according to the Conjunction employed: **quamvis**, **licet**, **ut**, take the **Subjunctive**; **quamquam** the **Indicative**. **etsi** follows the construction of **sī** *if*, with which it is compounded. See previous exercise.

N.B.—Some of the following Sentences should be turned both with the conjunctions that take the Indicative and those that take the Subjunctive.

72.

1. Although he sang well, he pleased me little (*pārum*).
2. Although he is speaking, I cannot hear him.
3. I would not believe him, though he swore (should swear) by Jupiter.
4. Although I speak the truth (*true-things*), nobody believes me.
5. Although the sun shines, the birds are-silent.
6. Although he should kill me, yet I would praise him.
7. Although he had lately lost his wife, he was behaving cheerfully (*adj.*).
8. I would not obey you (now), though you were emperor.
9. I did not see him, though he came to Rome.
10. Though he should sell a worthless horse at a great price, he would not act unjustly, unless he knew that the horse was worthless.
11. Though he is learned, is he therefore wise?
12. Though he were (now) dying, she would not weep.
13. Though I were king, should I therefore rule wisely?
14. Though the culprit is my brother, nevertheless I think he ought to be punished.
15. I should think the culprit ought to be punished, though he were my own brother.

Participles in Conditional and other Clauses.

1. Temporal, Causal, Conditional, and Concessive Clauses are often cast in a Participial Form, the Perfect Participle of Deponents and the Ablative Absolute being freely employed. Only this method should be used in the following exercise. (See *Caution*, Ex. 24, B.)

Temporal.—**When** he had said this his dictis; **when** they had remained two days bidūm mōrātī.

Causal.—**Since** the man is dead hōmīnē mortuō; **this** will not terrify him, **since** he has often suffered worse grāviorā passum nīhīl haec terrēbunt.

Conditional.—**If** the town is taken oppidō captō; **if** he has suffered worse things, why does he fear? grāviorā passūs cūr tīmēt?

Concessive.—**Although** he has suffered worse things, still he fears grāviorā passūs tāmēn haec tīmēt; **although** the general has been taken, we must not despair etiā captō dūcē nīhīl despērāndum.

2. A Final Clause may be cast in any of the following forms:—

1. servum misērunt ut Mārium necārēt.
2. „ „ quī „ „
3. „ „ ad Mārium necāndum.
4. „ „ causā Marīi necandī.
5. „ „ Mārium necātum.
6. „ „ Mārium necātūrum.

(5) can only be used after a Verb of Motion, and (6) is rare.

7. Nūntiūs vēnīt causā aliquid pētendī.

This last form is rarely found, unless the Object of the Gerund is a Neuter Pronoun. (See Ex. 53.)

73.

1. When he had thus encouraged them, he departed.
2. Although the sun had risen, the cold was severe.

3. If the snow has not-yet melted, we shall not be able to cross the mountain.
4. Although the snows had melted, the passage was difficult.
5. He grieves because his father has been suddenly killed.
6. When they had charged once, they fled.
7. Although the sun had not yet risen, we set-out.
8. If the defendant denies it, how will you prove your case?
9. Though Curio has done the office of a whetstone for thee, he has succeeded little in sharpening thy wit.
10. How will you plunder him, if he is already plundered?
11. Although they had attacked suddenly, they did not terrify our men.
12. When hostages have been given, we will grant peace.
13. Since the king was still a boy, his mother reigned.
14. The lion, although he be dead, is worth more than a living ass.
15. If Nola were captured, we should soon be able to finish the war.
16. If he had been present, I should not have acted otherwise.
17. What would you say, if your father were defendant?
18. If Troy is taken, why do they not return?
19. Though Troy has been taken long ago, he has not yet returned.
20. Though I have forgotten the words, I remember the tune.

Conditional Statement: Mixed Types.

(a) There being no Indicative of the *Indefinite Second Person*, the *Subjunctive* is used instead: *standum est in lectō, sī quid dē summō pētās, one must stand on the sofa, if one wants anything from the top.*

If any other person is used, the *Ind.* is necessary. Hence: *sī quid pētīmūs or sī quid pētītūr.*

(b) The *Indicative* is used regularly in phrases like *longum est it would be long.*

Longum est sī omniā nār- It would be a long affair, if I
rem told everything.

Mēlīūs ērāt sī dimicāssēt { It would have been better, if
he had fought.

(c) The *Subjunctive* (especially in the *Secondary Tenses*) is occasionally replaced by an expression in the *Indicative*.

<p>sī signum dātum essēt <i>If a signal had been given</i></p>	<p>{ pūgnārē dēbēbant (ōportēbāt) <i>it was their duty to fight (they ought to have fought).</i> pūgnārē pōtērant <i>they were able to fight (might have fought).</i> pūgnandum ērāt <i>they were obliged to fight (would have had to fight).</i> pūgnātūrī ērant <i>they were on the eve of fight- ing (intended to fight).</i> pūgnābant <i>they were for fighting (were pre- pared to fight).</i></p>
--	--

sī vellēs, pōtērās (licēbāt) You might have come, if you
vēnirē had wished.

See also Rules for Ex. 84.

74.

1. If one wishes to fish, leave must be asked.
2. It would be long to tell how many horses broke-down.
3. It would have been better, if he had never been born.
4. If we had had a leader, we could have fought.

5. If there had been more, we should have had to fight (gerund).
 6. I was about-to-summon witnesses, if he had denied it.
 7. If the engines had arrived in time, we might have taken the town.
 8. I was-ready-to-reply, if it had been permitted.
 9. I could have come, if I had known that you were-ill.
 10. You might have played yesterday, *if* it had *not* snowed.
 11. Whatever he had (might have) said, they ought to have indulged him.
 12. We might have come earlier, if you had summoned us.
 13. If the standard-bearer had advanced, the soldiers would have had to follow (gerund).
 14. I could not have done it, even if I had wished.
 15. Titus might have come-to-the-rescue, if he had been summoned.
 16. I intended to write, if I had not received your letter.
 17. It would have been better to hold your peace.
 18. It would be long to recount that-fellow's (pron.) vices.
 19. One has to speak with a loud voice, if one wishes to be heard.
 20. If you had written a letter, Mārcus might have brought it.
- (For more examples see Ex. 84.)

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

Speeches and messages of any considerable length are not usually reported in the words of the speaker (called Direct Discourse), but in a peculiar form of indirect construction to which the name of *orātiō obliquā* (or Indirect Discourse) is specially applied.

For the most part speeches (and messages) are reported by 'third persons' (that is, not by the persons speaking or addressed at the time), and some time after their delivery.

Hence the changes involved in converting Direct

Discourse (*Ōrātiō Rēctā*, O. R.) into Indirect Discourse are generally threefold, and are due to—

(A) **Change of Construction**, Direct Quotation becoming Indirect.

(B) **Change of Person**.

(C) **Change of Time**.

(A) CHANGES OF CONSTRUCTION.

Statements made in the **Indicative** in *Oratio Recta* appear in the **Infinitive** (with *Acc.*) in *Oratio Obliqua*.

The following examples illustrate this change :

DIRECT DISCOURSE.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

Egō itā censēō.	Dicō mē itā censērē.
Rōmānī victī sunt .	Dicīt Rōmānōs victōs essē .
Auxīliū tūlī.	Dicō mē auxīliū tūlissē.
Auxīliū fēram ipsē.	Dicō mē ipsum auxīliū lātūrum.
Caesār aegrōtābāt.	Dicō Caesārem (tum) aegrōtāssē. ¹
Caesar vērērāt.	Dicīt Caesārem (iam tum) vērissē. ²

Translate the following sentences first of all in *Oratio Recta*, as they stand ; then re-write them in *Oratio Obliqua* after *dīcō*, *I say*. The *tenses* will remain unchanged.

75.

1. I have come, seen, conquered !
2. We have captured many towns, some by assault, some by siege.
3. I will give thee this book written in Italy many years ago.
4. Thou hast come to Rome too late.
5. The mountains will soon be covered with snow.
6. Countless leaves, shaken-down from the trees, will be strewn on-the-ground.
7. I was hunting in the forest on my birthday.
8. We had killed two boars, using (perf.) spears and dogs.

¹ Perf. Inf. representing the non-existent Imperf. Inf.

² Perf. Inf. representing the non-existent Pluperf. Inf.

9. The sun had set behind the mountains, and night was approaching before our return.
10. I was dragging my limbs wearily.
11. The enemy will soon be routed.
12. The cavalry had already fled, some one way, some another.
13. The boy had written most-things correctly.
14. By-falling often water eats-away stone.
15. Most men desire to follow virtue, but are weak in striving.
16. Few men love vice, but many follow it not by their own will.
17. Evening was now coming on, and the maiden had not yet returned home.
18. In the island of Cyprus many vases of great value have been recently discovered.
19. Even (*iam*) then he had ceased to love his father.
20. He has set out in a ship to seek another home.

The **Subjunctive in Principal Sentences** of Oratio Recta is changed as follows :—

Primary Tenses of the Subjunctive are represented :

In the *Active* by the *Future Participle* with **essē** ;

In the *Passive* by **fōrē (fūtūrum essē) ūt** with Subj.

Secondary Tenses of the Subjunctive are represented :

In the *Active* by the *Future Participle* with **fūissē** ;

In the *Passive* by **fūtūrum fūissē ūt** with Subj.

N.B.—In Oratio Obliqua all **Dependent Sentences** are in the **Subjunctive**.

DIRECT DISCOURSE.

Vēniam (*I would come*).

Căpiār (*I should be caught*).

Vēnissem (*I should have come*).

Captūs essem (*I should have been caught*).

INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

Dicō mē ventūrum essē.

Dicō fōrē ūt căpiār.

Dicō mē ventūrum fūissē.

Dicō fūtūrum fūissē ūt căpērēr.

Translate the following sentences first of all in *Oratio Recta*, as they stand; then re-write them in *Oratio Obliqua* after *dīcō*, *I say* :—

76.

1. I would give, if I were able.
2. I would say, if I knew.
3. I would have said (perf.), if I had known (perf.).
4. He would now be dying, unless I had helped him.
5. I should have cried that all-was-over-with the state.
6. Few men would be happy, if they knew all their own misfortunes.
7. Many men would be happier, if they knew their blessings.

Treat similarly after *dīcīs* ? *dost thou say* ?—

8. The city would soon be taken, if we ourselves were brave.
9. The king himself would have led out the army, *if* he had *not* been-ill.
10. If thou wert here, thou wouldst think otherwise.
11. If he had lived five years more, the dictator would have brought that great undertaking to an end.
12. The citizens would have made him king, and all men would have rejoiced.
13. If he had perceived the queen's treachery, Claudius would not have eaten the mushroom.
14. If he had perceived that the mushroom was poisoned, he would have preferred to eat his wife.
15. If the consul had pardoned his son, the citizens also would have pardoned the young man.

(B) CHANGES OF PERSON.

If a speech is reported by a 'third person,'

The First Person is generally represented by *sē* (*sūūs*).

The Second Person „ *is* or *illē*.

The Third Person is generally represented by **is** or **illě**.

Hic and **istě** generally become **illě**, **hic** *here* **ibi** or **illic**.

Illě is used of the more emphatic Person, Second or Third as the case may be ; **is** of the less emphatic one.

DIRECT DISCOURSE.

Crēdō tē crās pĕrītūrum nīš
pĕrīus illě scělĕrī ignōv-
ĕrīt, *I believe that thou*
wilt die to-morrow unless
he shall previously have
pardoned thy crime.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

Dīcīt sē crēdĕrĕ ěum crās
pĕrītūrum nīš illě pĕrīus
scělĕrī ignōvĕrīt.

In order to avoid confusion the speaker, when emphatic, is sometimes denoted by *ipsě*.

Sciō vōs neque vōbīs nĕqŭe Dīcīt sē scirĕ ěōs neque sībī
mīhī dĕfūtūrōs. neque *ipsī* dĕfūtūrōs.

77.

Report after **dīcīt**, *he says* :—

1. If thou hadst asked me, I would have come.
2. I believe that we shall capture him to-morrow.
3. I know that thou hast done this thing.
4. I believe that Catilina sought my life.
5. Now ye know what I have done.
6. I will tell you, O citizens, what Caesar has suffered for you.
7. I promise you both many flocks and broad fields for (*ād*) ploughing.
8. For thy sake (abl.) have I suffered these things.
9. Unless thou shalt succour me, I shall die.
10. Although I once knew these things, I have now forgotten them.
11. Thou camest to my house, and stolest the meat.
12. I know that thou art unwilling to pardon me.
13. I have pardoned both thee and thy companions.

14. The town will be captured in ten days unless reinforcements arrive first (*prius*).
15. I was unwilling to reply, because I had not consulted Gaius.
16. If I knew (now), I would say.
17. I send you as sheep among wolves.
18. Ye will suffer many things, but even in dying ye will triumph.
19. Ye will some-day reign with me.
20. I know that thou art weary ; I also am weary.
21. I am king, thou art queen ; but he (unemphatic) has taken away our kingdom.
22. It is necessary that *thou* (emphatic) kill her.
23. Thou lovest *him* ; *Marcus* thou lovest not.

(C) CHANGE OF TIME (TENSE).

If a speech is reported some time after it has been delivered, the *Primary* Tenses in **Dependent Sentences** are regularly changed to the corresponding *Secondary* Tenses.

For the Tenses to be used in reporting Principal Sentences, see Ex. 14.

Adverbs of Time suffer a corresponding change, nunc becoming tum or tunc.

The following are examples :—

DIRECT DISCOURSE.	INDIRECT DISCOURSE (after dixit he said).
<i>Nōs</i> itā ā pātrībus <i>nostrīs</i> dīdīcī m ūs ut māgīs virtūtē quam dōlō contendā m ūs.	<i>Sē</i> itā ā pātrībus <i>sūis</i> dīdīcī s issē ut māgīs virtūtē quam dōlō contendērent.
Id quōd cēnsēō ēlōquār.	<i>Sē</i> id quōd cēnsērēt ēlōcūtūrum.
Etsi id <i>tum</i> dōlēbam <i>nunc</i> gaudēō.	Etsi <i>antēā</i> id dōlērēt <i>tum</i> sē gaudērē.

Translate in *Oratio Recta*, and then report in *Oratio Obliqua* after *dixit* or *dixerunt* :—

78.

1. I am now advising my son to study Greek.
2. I know not what thou sayest.
3. What flowers I have, are fading.
4. If thou shalt come, I shall see thee.
5. If I had money (now), I would give it.
6. If the camp has been captured, all is lost.
7. Although I am a Roman, I praise not all things at Rome.
8. I have come to announce a great disaster.
9. When the sun was setting, the enemy attacked us.
10. If thou wishest, we are willing to cross the river.
11. If I were to become king, I would rule more justly.
12. If ye were to flee, ye would not escape.
13. We ask thee to pardon our treachery.
14. We forget when old what we learned when young.
15. I wonder how thou canst endure such things.
16. If you (shall) come, I will give you what flowers I have.
17. Unless you mend your character, you will not die happy.
18. We shall easily capture the town with the forces which we have.
19. This is the most beautiful song of all (use *is*) which I have ever heard.
20. Few men are content with what they have gained.

Questions in *Oratio Obliqua*.

1. Questions in the *Subjunctive* in O. R. remain in the *Subjunctive*.
2. Questions in the *Indicative* in O. R. are of two kinds.
 - (A) **Real Questions** asked *for the sake of obtaining information*. These, when reported, are to be treated as **Ordinary Dependent Questions**. See Ex. 56.

(B) **Rhetorical Questions**, asked *merely for effect*.
These again are of two kinds.

(i) The first kind are merely *disguised statements*. Thus
nōnnē fidem praestitīmus? implies 'We *have kept faith*';
num cēdērē iūbētis? implies 'Surely you do *not* bid me
surrender.' These questions are reported in the **Infinitive**
for **all Persons**.

Oratio Recta.

Oratio Obliqua.

Nōnnē fidem praestitīmus? Nōnnē sē fidem praestitīssē?

Have we not kept faith?

Num cēdērē iūbētis? Can Num cēdērē ēōs iūbērē?
it be that you bid me
yield?

Quis ignōrāt? (*implying nemo* Quem ignōrārē?
ignōrāt) *Who does not*
know?

(ii) The second kind *imply that all the answers will be*
unsatisfactory. These are reported in the **Infinitive** if of
the **First** or **Third Person** (sometimes in the *Subjunctive*),
and always in the **Subjunctive** if of the **Second Person**.

Oratio Recta.

Oratio Obliqua.

Quid enim adsūmuntūr socii? Quid enim adsūmī sociōs?
(*No answer will be satis-* Why are they attached as
factory.) *allies?*

Quid vult attinērē? (No Quid eum vellē attinērē?
answer will be satisfactory.) What does he wish to
achieve?

Quid tibi vīs? cūr in mēās Quid sibi vellēt? cūr in suās
possessiōnēs vēnīs? (No possessiōnēs vēnirēt?
answer will be satisfactory.) What did he want? Why
was he invading his
property?

Certain Rhetorical Questions in the *Second Person*, which employ
verbs of *believing* or *supposing* (*crēdō, pūto, cēnsēō*), and are introduced

by an Interrogative Pronoun or Adverb, are reported in the *Subjunctive*. Thus *Quam pūlātis cōtinūātae mīlītiae causam esse?* (*What do you think is the reason why the campaign has been prolonged?*) becomes *Quam pūtārent*, &c. (The audience will not guess the real reason.)

Report the following questions in *Oratio Obliqua* as belonging to a speech delivered in past time.

79.

1. Who is willing to defend the bridge?
2. Has anybody dared to challenge him?
3. Why didst thou not return yesterday evening?
4. Has not a law about that matter been proposed?
5. Why do we idle here?
6. Dost thou wish us to die of-hunger or devoured by wild-beasts?
7. Who was then commanding the army?
8. What more beautiful work has anyone accomplished?
9. Why didst thou not at once strike him with the axe?
10. Are we to wait here until the enemy surprise us?
11. Why did we not choose a more skilful general?
12. Whence comest thou and whither goest thou?
13. Do ye wish to betray me, your faithful chief, to the enemy?
14. Will ye not thus give our posterity an example of basest cowardice?
15. Has any state become really great by trickery and treachery?
16. Hast thou not destroyed the state together with thyself?
17. Why did ye leave your pleasant homes?
18. Why have we wandered thus rashly into unknown lands over stormy seas?
19. Why do we thus without end labour with the oar?
20. Do we expect any end of our toils?
21. Can anyone propose a better plan than mine? If indeed he can, let him speak.

22. What do you suppose? That you will receive each (*singŭli*) three acres and one cow?
 23. What have we gained by so-many toils and journeys?
 24. Who has betrayed our plan to the enemy?
 25. Why did I leave father and home?

Commands and Wishes in Oratio Obliqua.

Exhortations in First Pers. Pl. may be turned by using the Gerund or Gerundive.

Commands are always in the **Subjunctive**.

Wishes. A verb of *wishing* is used with another verb depending on it.

DIRECT DISCOURSE.

Quārē nē commiſērīs ūt hīc
 lōcŭs ex cālāmītātē pōpŭli
 Rōmānī nōmēn cāpŭāt.

Nōlī pātriām dēsērērē.

Mōriār pōtīŭs quam nēquam
 vīvam!

Utīnam priŭs rēdiſſēs!

INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

Quārē nē committērēt ūt īs
 lōcŭs ex cālāmītātē pōpŭli
 Rōmānī nōmēn cāpērēt.

Nōllēt pātriām dēsērērē.

Māllē sē mōrī quam nēquam
 vīvērē.

Quam vellē sē ēum priŭs
 rēdiſſē.

Report after *dixit* (*impērāvīt*) or *dixerunt*.

80.

1. Go, run-over the Alps.
2. Would that thou hadst never departed!
3. May I die rather than survive thee!
4. Shout-out that ye wish Caesar to be king.
5. Do not fear traitors; trust to me.
6. Plunder the town, spare no-one.
7. Remember that thou wilt some-day die.
8. O that thou hadst died first (*priŭs*)!
9. O that thou hadst been more cautious in fighting!
10. Fear not their shoutings and clashing of arms.

11. Eat, drink, for to-morrow ye die.
12. Do not endeavour to heap up riches.
13. Work so-long-as the day remains. Can anyone work in darkness ?
14. Remember that thou hast promised to deliver a speech.
15. Would that I might fly-away and enjoy wished-for rest !
16. Would that I had died for thee !
17. Take the bridge and attack the camp.
18. When thou hast stormed the town, burn the houses.
19. Remember that glory and repose from toils await us at home.
20. Would that I had not seen that day !
21. Let us advance. Let us seize the hill.
22. Let us die rather than yield
23. Let us eat and drink, for we have now performed all our duties. Would that my father also were here !

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

Nouns.

81.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. By a cough. | 28. By thirst. |
| 2. Of a snake. | 29. Of fathers. |
| 3. Of young-men. | 30. Of oak. |
| 4. Heroes. | 31. Broken thighs. |
| 5. On-the sea. | 32. Covered mouths. |
| 6. By a shower. | 33. Scattered leaves. |
| 7. Through the upper-air. | 34. Two cranes. |
| 8. Of a poem. | 35. Blunt sickles. |
| 9. By poems. | 36. Of mothers. |
| 10. Of a citizen. | 37. Of citizens. |
| 11. Of furniture. | 38. The end of strife. |
| 12. Of brothers. | 39. Of fountains. |
| 13. To (<i>šd</i>) a tower. | 40. Of mice. |
| 14. By a pine. | 41. Of dogs. |
| 15. Bronze (pl.). | 42. By journeys. |
| 16. Rams. | 43. Rich men. |
| 17. Of old men. | 44. Of flocks. |
| 18. Bachelors. | 45. Of oxen. |
| 19. Two-headed twins. | 46. Livers and hearts. |
| 20. Of ashes. | 47. Hares full of wit. |
| 21. Of heads. | 48. Two baskets of acorns. |
| 22. Of fetters. | 49. Jars of honey. |
| 23. Of mountains. | 50. Of white snow. |
| 24. Of guardians. | 51. Bones of oxen. |
| 25. Dowries. | 52. Grandsons of consuls. |
| 26. Bones. | 53. Against the (house) wall. |
| 27. Of ivory. | 54. With worthy wages (sing.). |

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 55. Marshes of blackest pitch. | 77. By vessels. |
| 56. Attendants of kings. | 78. Two sails. |
| 57. Leaves of willows. | 79. Of vessels. |
| 58. Two owls on a stump. | 80. By three bows. |
| 59. With blood and salt. | 81. Of prayers. |
| 60. Surviving soldiers. | 82. By a banquet. |
| 61. Backs of swine. | 83. Of nobody. |
| 62. Two sureties. | 84. Of a fowler. |
| 63. Three vessels. | 85. Of steps. |
| 64. For harbours. | 86. Of young-men. |
| 65. In spring. | 87. For fathers. |
| 66. Of two bows. | 88. Three acres. |
| 67. In lakes. | 89. From nobody, |
| 68. By faith. | 90. Of baggage. |
| 69. For a head-of-a-household. | 91. Of works. |
| 70. Of heads-of-households. | 92. By an oath. |
| 71. Many jests. | 93. For old men. |
| 72. These places. | 94. Round tops. |
| 73. Bits and harrows. | 95. Of cool fountains. |
| 74. Of thick canvas. | 96. Of white teeth. |
| 75. By an oath. | 97. Two old-women. |
| 76. Of the republic. | 98. By a huge weight. |
| | 99. Of three journeys. |
| | 100. Two-hundred dormice. |

Verbs.—A.

In the following Exercise translate

‘That I (thou, &c.) **may**’ by *ūt* with **Pres.** Subjunct.

‘That I (thou, &c.) **might**’ by *ūt* with **Impf.** Subjunct.

82.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. It was rattling. | 5. He helped us. |
| 2. That I may tame. | 6. Roasted meat. |
| 3. To drink (supine). | 7. They increased (transitive). |
| 4. It flashed. | |

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 8. The light will shine. | 37. That we may smear. |
| 9. They stroked. | 38. That ye may laugh. |
| 10. They milked. | 39. Who has fed the swine? |
| 11. He stuck in the mud. | 40. She has been accus-
tomed. |
| 12. Ye advised (<i>suāḍḍō</i>). | 41. We-came to cultivate
(supine). |
| 13. He will have twisted. | 42. Ye pressed (<i>urgṣō</i>). |
| 14. It sounded. | 43. We shall sow. |
| 15. He was taking precau-
tions. | 44. That we may reap. |
| 16. To prop (supine). | 45. We sowed. |
| 17. That she might nourish. | 46. The crop has grown. |
| 18. He desired. | 47. To foster (supine). |
| 19. The lions roared. | 48. We fostered. |
| 20. The screech-owls
screeched. | 49. A concealed pit. |
| 21. She dared to laugh. | 50. A boy well nourished. |
| 22. We rejoiced. | 51. We sought. |
| 23. We dined on vegetables
(acc.) | 52. We know. |
| 24. We have been accus-
tomed. | 53. A recognised friend. |
| 25. I will cultivate. | 54. We then reclined. |
| 26. That she might weep. | 55. He groaned. |
| 27. It rattled. | 56. They grind. |
| 28. He vowed. | 57. We summoned the man. |
| 29. That we may cut. | 58. They are being sum-
moned. |
| 30. Thou hast advised
(<i>suāḍḍō</i>). | 59. That they might die. |
| 31. We laughed. | 60. He is being borne. |
| 32. The torches were shin-
ing. | 61. It became-known. |
| 33. A twisted rope. | 62. We joined battle. |
| 34. Why did they vow? | 63. They were dying. |
| 35. He pressed (<i>urgṣō</i>). | 64. Birds were flying. |
| 36. It will sound. | 65. No one was willing. |
| | 66. We snatched. |
| | 67. That they may be tamed. |
| | 68. He will not wish. |

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 69. That we may be caught. | 99. Painted shapes. |
| 70. Few have preferred. | 100. Sown seeds. |
| 71. That they might be borne. | 101. They burnt-up the body. |
| 72. They pressed grapes. | 102. He took-away nothing. |
| 73. Combed hair. | 103. Knocked-down to the earth. |
| 74. If we shall have been able. | 104. Wars carried on. |
| 75. Scraped chins. | 105. Nails fixed. |
| 76. They decreed. | 106. Bent parsley. |
| 77. Arrows smeared with poison. | 107. We were taking-away. |
| 78. She knew. | 108. It snowed. |
| 79. They have ground the corn. | 109. They clapped hands (abl.). |
| 80. That he may groan. | 110. He brought out wine. |
| 81. That she may die. | 111. He sank the ship. |
| 82. She will hide. | 112. Sunk in the sea. |
| 83. It rained. | 113. Moulded in wax. |
| 84. We rubbed long. | 114. We rose. |
| 85. Thou art being borne. | 115. The mice gnawed this. |
| 86. He laid them low. | 116. He lived with me. |
| 87. That he might snatch. | 117. He bent his staff. |
| 88. They have joined battle. | 118. That we may lie-down. |
| 89. He is being borne. | 119. That they may be tamed. |
| 90. That he may be willing. | 120. Men conquered and bound. |
| 91. Nobody preferred. | 121. I beat, he fell. |
| 92. That we might snatch. | 122. Deceived and driven back. |
| 93. That he might prefer. | 123. Whom hast thou spared? |
| 94. That they might be snatched. | 124. I shall hang-up the fish. |
| 95. Many had been unwilling. | 125. The fish will hang down. |
| 96. We shall not be able. | 126. Burnt-up corpses. |
| 97. Hair spread-out. | |
| 98. Shaken trees. | |

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 127. They took - away all things. | 156. Who has loved? (<i>dīlīgō</i>) |
| 128. They carried-on war. | 157. We left them there. |
| 129. We fixed nails. | 158. I came, I saw, I conquered ! |
| 130. We bent the oars. | 159. He defended us. |
| 131. We beat-our-breasts. | 160. Split logs. |
| 132. We clapped our hands (abl.) | 161. Torn togas. |
| 133. It was snowing. | 162. Rolled in the mud. |
| 134. Boats sunk in the sea. | 163. We opened the basket. |
| 135. Vases fashioned with skill. | 164. He understood nothing. |
| 136. They rose. | 165. We blow that they may blow. |
| 137. Bent spears. | 166. They wept that we might weep. |
| 138. Books gnawed by mice. | 167. Open doors. |
| 139. He moulded many vases. | 168. She jumped down. |
| 140. Carven statues. | 169. They are jumping down. |
| 141. We lived there. | 170. Patched by the tailor. |
| 142. That they may be washed. | 171. Having awaked (intrans.). |
| 143. He lived long. | 172. We were suffering. |
| 144. He conquered many. | 173. Having assented. |
| 145. Women conquered and bound. | 174. They will strive. |
| 146. Beaten with rods he fell. | 175. They shine. |
| 147. We spared all. | 176. That they may flee. |
| 148. We compelled all. | 177. That we may rout them. |
| 149. I bought, she ate. | 178. That they might flee. |
| 150. We were compelled. | 179. That we might rout them. |
| 151. Bought and eaten. | 180. What have ye read ? |
| 152. We dug-out the gold. | 181. What hast thou left ? |
| 153. They read the books. | 182. What did he see ? |
| 154. We are contriving. | 183. What did ye conquer ? |
| 155. Who has collected ? | 184. We defended him. |
| | 185. Split teeth. |

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 186. Burnt tombs. | 194. Having suffered worse- |
| 187. We understood all. | things. |
| 188. With head covered. | 195. They preferred to suffer. |
| 189. We all jumped-down. | 196. Having tried the mat- |
| 190. We drew water. | ter. |
| 191. Water drawn from the | 197. The risen sun. |
| well. | 198. Stars are rising. |
| 192. Having performed. | 199. We shall use. |
| 193. We felt these things. | 200. Having bargained. |

Verbs.—B.

(With some of the more difficult Nouns.)

83.

1. We are unwilling to rouse the tiger.
2. The hinges of the door creaked.
3. Who has tamed these lions?
4. I stood on the tower in a shower.
5. I have washed the axe; it was stained with-blood.
6. The key stuck in the lock.
7. It thundered with-great violence; the earth trembled.
8. The ships blazed, seized by the swift fire.
9. We saw no end of many journeys and labours.
10. The very-keen cold rouses my (*to me*) cough.
11. Who will be able to cut the tigers' claws?
12. She was bitten by a snake which was lurking in the grass.
13. The men struck by Circē's wand will become swine.
14. We were not able to restrain his violence.
15. We swallowed much salt. We aroused a keen thirst.
16. Thou hast bought much furniture and statues made of bronze.
17. They had seen Circē, whose beauty they admired.
18. They sought him in every apartment, but he had already escaped.

19. They had eaten roasted meat; we had dined-on vegetables.
20. The boys recognised the crane, the mouse, the dormouse, the ram, the hawk, the screech-owl, the duck, and the swine.
21. We laughed-at a flock of cranes, whose legs as-they-flew (*of-them-flying*) hung-down.
22. These magic herbs have been culled by (*ā*) Cīrcē with a golden sickle.
23. She wiped-off the milk which had fallen from the basin.
24. He has gone to his bedroom to-lie-down (*supine*).
25. O Clōthō, be-unwilling to cut so quickly the thread which thou hast spun.
26. From-heaven a divine beam shone.
27. Then we mourned, because we had remained inactive.
28. The barbarians hurled stones; our-men shot bullets from the catapults.
29. If we are (*shall be*) able we will come to support (*supine*) thee.
30. He denied that men were produced from apes.
31. I indeed (*said-he*) have always favoured the cause of the celestials, on whose side I shall always be (*stāre ā*).
32. Then all laughed and clapped (*with*) their hands.
33. We have come to lunch (*supine*), not to support the candidate.
34. The brutal fellow struck the hare with a brick.
35. We ground in a mortar the poison with which the arrows have been smeared.
36. The jury decided that the heir had moved the landmark.
37. These things became-known (*in*) the next winter.
38. I bade you come to reap (*supine*), not to sleep.
39. Pines have never borne walnuts, nor willows beans.
40. They sent-for the bachelors whom no maiden had been willing to marry.

41. Then they set-down the anvil and grasped the pincers and hammers.
42. It snowed through the whole night, but now it rains.
43. How-large a flock ! How-many beasts hast thou ?
44. This actor they hissed-off-the-stage, that one they have always favoured.
45. Unless thou shalt have shaken the oak violently the acorns will not fall.
46. They sought-for large treasures of ivory which the kings had hidden, and [when] at-length found, dug them out with-spades.
47. We have sowed wheat, we shall therefore not reap oats.
48. His mother came to cover (supine) him with a robe which she had woven.
49. I saw him covered with this robe, which they told me was woven of silk (abl.).

N.B.—In the following sentences translate

‘In order that I (thou, &c.) **may**’ by *üt* and **Pres.** Subjunct.
 ‘In order that . . . **might**’ by *üt* and **Impf.** Subjunct.

50. We have bought the knife in order that we may cut the meat.
51. He thrust a torch into my eye in order that he might burn it.
52. Bring thou turf and leaves ; I will bring brazen vessels and a knife, in order that we may sacrifice the ox.
53. Who has eaten the pottage ? I had bought it in order that I might dine.
54. He crawled in the dust to the king’s feet, where he prostrated himself.
55. The vessels are dyed with the blood of the swine.
56. In order that he might be willing to speak, they thumped his (*to him*) head with a whetstone. He, however, despised their brutality.
57. Why hast thou not sewn my (*to me*) torn shoe ?

58. Behold, thou hast thy shoe well sewn ! I have also wiped-off the mud.
59. The giant using (perf. part.) all his strength split the fetters as-if made of withies (abl.).
60. Open the prison in order that we may free [those] unjustly bound.
61. She has come to draw (supine) water, but has forgotten her pitcher.
62. Suddenly awakened I felt a sharp pain.
63. They avenged his violent-death in order that others might fear to attempt such-things.
64. Having measured the ground, they began (*ōrdīor*) to bargain with the owners.
65. Badly patched, O tailor, are the trousers which (*quās*) thou hast patched.
66. We saw his toga whitened by the fuller, spread-out on-the-ground.
67. They drank the heir's wine out of cups which Cellinus had fashioned.
68. With-tongue thrust-out, the dog, seized by madness, sought cold water in order that he might allay his thirst.
69. I crawled to the place, I found the root, I gnawed it greedily.
70. We have ceased to burn corpses ; we bury them in the earth.
71. They used to give hemlock to the condemned, in order that they might die more calmly.
72. Combed and with-beard clipped, he was scarcely recognised by me.
73. These things thou hast sown, these things thou wilt reap.
74. We saw pressed grapes in the press, and barley stored in the barn.
75. Riding (perf. part.) on a horse he was fleeing to the old-man's house.

76. I wished (impf.) to follow, but he perceived me.
 77. Ye will find him buried outside the walls.
 78. We poured the mellow wine, we ate the sweet fruits, and
 having dined flung ourselves down in-sleep upon the
 shore.
 79. The king sat-down, the courtiers stood-round.
 80. This robe covered (*tēgō*) the dead king. The queen
 wove it.
 81. The queen also was covered with-a-robe woven by her
 daughter.

Can have, Might have, Ought to have, &c.

1. The rendering of the expressions *can have*, *might have*, *could have*, *ought to have*, *should have*, requires care. The Verbs *possum*, *licet*, *oportet*, *dēbēō* are most commonly used, but in a manner contrary to the English idiom. The dependent *Infinitives* are put in the *Present Tense*, and the *Principal Verbs* in a *Past Tense* (Imperf. or Perf.) of the Indicative.

2. The English *may* and *might have* are ambiguous. Thus *he may speak* may mean (1) *it is permitted to him* (*licet*) *to speak*; or (2) *it is possible that* (*fiēri pōtest ūt*) *he may speak*; and similarly, *he might have returned* may mean (1) *it was permissible to him* (*licuit*) *to return*, or (2) *he was able* (*pōtērāt*) *to return* (if he had wished).

You should or ought to have } *oportēbāt* (*oportūit*) *tē* vēnirē.
 come } *dēbēbās* (*dēbūisti*) vēnirē.

You might have come }
You could have come } *pōtērās* (*potūisti*) vēnirē.

You might have come (it was } *licēbāt* (or *licuit*) *tibi* vē-
 permissible) } nīrē.

You may come (it is per- } *licet* *tibi* vēnirē.
 mitted) }

He may or might (possibly) } *fiēri pōtest ūt* vēniat.
 come }

<i>He may be ill</i>	<i>fīērī pōtest ūt aegrōtēt.</i>
<i>He may have stumbled</i>	<i>fīērī pōtest ūt tītūbāvērīt.</i>
<i>Who can have done it?</i>	<i>quīs pōtūt fācērē?</i>
<i>He cannot be ill</i>	<i>nōn pōtest fīērī ūt aegrōtēt.</i>
<i>He cannot have come</i>	<i>nōn pōtest fīērī ūt iam vēnērīt.</i>

For *may* and *may have* fortasse (with Indic.) can also be used :—

<i>He may be in exile</i>	<i>fortassē exūlāt.</i>
<i>He may then have been in exile</i>	<i>} fortassē tum exūlābāt.</i>

See also Ex. 74.

84.

1. You ought to have given him the book.
2. He might have remained at home, if he had wished.
3. Who can have told him these things?
4. The consul ought not to have led-out the army.
5. They may have been captured by brigands.
6. You may speak, if you wish.
7. They could not have seen me, for I was lurking behind the tree.
8. I might have supped with you, if you had asked me.
9. They ought not to have pardoned so-great a rogue.
10. He may be still at Carthage.
11. We could not have taken the town, unless Labiēnus had helped us.
12. You should have brought the book with you, that we might read it together.
13. May I ask one thing?
14. He might sing, if you yourself were to ask him.
15. She may have said this (pl.), but I believe she denied the whole matter.
16. They may be waiting for us in the wood.
17. Could you not have come, if you had wished?

18. They should have seized the hill before the enemy arrived.
19. We might have waited-for you at Athens, if we had known that you intended to come thither.
20. Why may we not advance against the enemy?
21. He may not have seen us.
22. He could not have breathed, if he had remained there longer.
23. We ought not to have attacked them before night.
24. We might have seen the procession, if we had arrived in time.
25. He may have gone-away before your arrival.
26. You should have held-your-peace.
27. I could not have believed that she would betray me.
28. He cannot have denied that he said this (pl.).
29. Could you not have killed him with a dagger or with poison?
30. I ought to have written more correctly.

Verbs taking ut with Subjunctive.

The following list includes some of the more common Verbs which take ut with Subjunctive in the best Classical Prose, exclusive of Verbs of Requesting.

nē *that not* is added to those Verbs which take it in accordance with *New Latin Primer 393 sqq.* The Verbs marked (I) take an Infinitive (as complement) if their Subject and the Subject of the Dependent Verb are the same, as *dēcrevit ire* *he determined to go.*

<i>allow, grant</i>	{	concēdere ¹	<i>enact</i>	sancīre : nē
		permittere (I)		<i>endeavour</i> mōliri (I)
<i>bring about</i>	{	efficere : nē		<i>engage</i> pācisci : nē
		perficere : nē	<i>force</i>	perpellere
<i>determine</i>	{	cōstitūere	<i>induce</i>	addūcere
		dēcernere (I)		indūcere

¹ But Infinitive with Accusative in sense of granting that something is the case.

<i>press</i> instāre		
<i>recommend</i> cēnsēre ¹	<i>take care</i>	{ cāvēre : nē
<i>resolve</i> stātūere (I) : nē		{ cūrāre
		{ pīōvīdēre : nē
<i>secure</i> { assēquī	<i>try (attempt)</i>	temptāre
{ cōnsēquī : nē	<i>urge (incite)</i>	impellere
{ obtīnēre	<i>wait</i>	exspectāre
<i>strive</i> { contendere	<i>wish</i>	optāre
{ ēnīti		

85.

1. We were taking-care not to be seen by her.
2. Why did you not induce him to remain with you?
3. I shall recommend that each of the two practises his own craft.
4. The general would not (*nōlō*) allow the soldiers to linger any-longer in these charming places.
5. We have secured that he shall not oppose us.
6. We ought always to strive to excel others.
7. Take-care to do nothing rashly.
8. They had determined to remain there two-days more.
9. I shall endeavour to bring-it-about that Trebōnius supports Caesar.
10. You ought to strive not to forget the kindnesses you have received (*subj.*).
11. Why did you not wait for the consul to arrive?
12. You might have urged him to pardon me.
13. We could not secure his being elected consul, for he had not-yet returned to Rome.
14. We had all of us engaged not to oppose him, but he himself had not taken-care to win-over Antōnius.
15. His father will never allow him to sell so-cheap a horse that he bought (*subj.*) so-dear.
16. You ought to have forced him to confess the crime.
17. It has been enacted by law that he should not be allowed to stand-for the consulship in-his-absence.

¹ Also with Accusative and Gerundive ; in simple sense of *thinking*, Infinitive and Accusative.

18. He said that she had resolved to depart the next day.
19. He will attempt to govern the state alone.
20. I had resolved not to remain longer in so dangerous a place.
21. I have secured that he shall not be absent from the senate-house to-morrow.
22. He recommended that they should be buried in that place where they had fallen (*subj.*)
23. We have engaged not to give him less than ten-thousand sesterces.
24. Why do you think (*cēnsēo*) that he has resolved not to return?
25. I grant that he has resolved not to come, but I shall urge him, as much as I am able, to persevere in his purpose.

Utrum, Sive, &c.

Beginners are apt to confuse two distinct kinds of clauses, both introduced by the English *whether*.

1. *Substantival Sentences* (see Ex. 56).—These may be (a) Questions introduced by a Verb of *asking*, or (b) Clauses introduced by a Verb expressing *doubt*, *hesitation*, *ignorance*, *uncertainty*. It will be an assistance to remember that such clauses are, as their designation implies, equivalent to a Substantive (see *New Latin Primer*, 213, 214). *ūtrum*, *num*, *ān*, &c., are to be used.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <i>I ask whether he has come</i>
(about his <i>arrival</i> , subst.) | } Rōgō ūtrum vēnērīt. |
| <i>I am ignorant whether he has come or not</i> (about his <i>arrival</i> or <i>non-arrival</i> , subst.) | |
| <i>They doubt whether it is honourable or disgraceful</i>
(about its <i>honourableness</i> or <i>disgracefulness</i> , substt.) | } Honestumnē factū sīt ān turpē dūbītant. |
| | |

*It is uncertain whether he has
come (his arrival, subst., is
uncertain)* } Incertum est ūtrum vēnērīt.

*Whether he comes or not (his
arrival or non-arrival
subst.) matters not to me.* } Utrum vēnīāt annōn nīhīl
mēā interest.

2. *Adverbial Clauses.*—In these *whether . . . or* is equivalent to *if . . . or if*, and therefore, as distinct from those mentioned above, they are Alternative Conditional Clauses. The rules for ordinary Conditional Clauses apply (see Ex. 71). **Sivě . . . sivě** or **seu . . . seu** must be used (not **sivě . . . seu**, nor **seu . . . sivě**).

*Whether (if) he confesses or
(if he) denies, they will not
spare him.* Sivě cōfessūs ērīt, sivě
nēgāvērīt, nīhīl ēi par-
cent.

If *or not* occurs, the previous *verb* must be repeated.

Whether it pleases you or not, I shall now set-out. Sivě plācēt tībī, sivě nōn
plācēt, ēgō iam prōfīciscār.

86.

1. It is altogether uncertain whether he has died or not.
2. Whether he has already returned or not, I do not know.
3. I shall remain at-home to-day, whether I receive (fut. perf.) a letter from him or not.
4. No-one knows whether he is a Roman or a Greek.
5. Whether he has replied or not, that very-thing (*ipse*) I have now-for-a-long-time been asking.
6. Who cares whether his name is Gāius or Mārcus?
7. It does not matter to anybody whether he has supported Cicero or Caesar.
8. I shall never love the man hereafter, whether I pardon him or not.
9. Whether the poem was written by Virgil or by some other, is doubted.

10. Whether the defendant is guilty or not, he will not be convicted by the jury.
11. No-one knows whether Caesar wishes the crown to be offered him by Antōnius or not.
12. Whether the barbarians give the hostages or refuse, Caesar has determined to depart to-morrow.
13. All doubted whether the matter pleased him or not.
14. It becomes us to perform our duty, whether it is pleasant or not.
15. Who doubts whether or not anger is sometimes just?
16. He says that they are like dogs in colour and appearance, but that he does not know whether or not they are really dogs.
17. Whether Clōdius attacked Milo first or the latter [attacked] Clodius [first], no one doubts that each wished to kill the other.
18. I am not able to distinguish whether they live or are ghosts; but whether they are alive or dead I do not fear them.
19. Whether he arrives at night or by day, he will find me waiting for him.
20. There is no doubt that the tree was mine, whether I cut it down or not.

The Roman Calendar.

The Romans had the same months, and the same number of days in each as we have. But their reckoning was *backward* and *inclusive*, that is, they counted in the day reckoned *from* as well as the day reckoned *to*. Thus they reckoned the 29th of April as the *third* day *before* the 1st of May.

The Days from which they reckoned were called—

Kālendae (Kāl.) *f. Kalends*, the 1st of the month.

Nōnae (Nōn.) *f. Nones*, usually the 5th.

Idūs (Id.) *f. Ides*, usually the 13th. [The I in Idūs is long.]

But—In **March, July, October, May,**
 The Ides fell on the **fifteenth** day,
 and consequently the Nones on the **7th** day of the month.

The Nōnae were so called because, in Roman reckoning, they were the *ninth* day before the Ides.

The Months were called—

*Jānuārius, Fēbruārius, Mārtius, Aprīlis, Māius, Jūnius, Quīntilis July,*¹ *Sextilis August,*² September, Octōber, Nōvember, Dēcember : used either as Masc. Nouns, *mēnsis month* being understood, or as Adjectives agreeing with *Kalendae*, etc.

The Romans indicated the days of the months as follows :—

- I. The days on which the Kalends, Nones, and Ides fell, by the *Ablatives* *Kālendīs, Nōnīs, Idibus*, and the name of the month agreeing with them, as *Nōnīs Mārtiis on the Nones of March*, i.e., March 7.
- II. The days preceding the Kalends, etc., by prefixing *prīdiē the day before* to the *Accusatives* *Kālendās*, etc., and the name of the month agreeing with them, as *prīdiē Nōnās Mārtiās the day before the Nones of March*, i.e., March 6.
- III. All other days by prefixing *antē diem tertium, quartum*, etc., to the *Accusatives* *Kālendās*, etc., and the name of the month agreeing with them, as under II. : *ante diem tertium Nōnās Mārtiās the second day (third in inclusive reckoning) before the Nones of March*, i.e., March 5.

Abbreviations and Numerals were generally used in expressing the date, thus :—

- a. d. III Nōn. Mārt., *March 5.*
- prīd. Kāl. Jān., *December 31.*
- a. d. VIII Id. Quīnt., *July 8.*

In leap year a day was inserted after February 24 (a. d. sextum Kal. Mart.), and called a. d. *bis sextum* Kal. Mart., whence leap year was called *bissextilis*. This day was not taken account of in reckoning the other days of the month.

The Year.—The Romans named the Year after the Consuls, as :—Antōniō Dolābellā Cos. (cōnsūlibus), *i.e.*,

¹ Called *Jūlius* after B.C. 45.

² Called *Augustus* after B.C. 8.

B.C. 44. Later the supposed date of the founding of Rome, B.C. 753, was used to reckon from. Thus, "78 A.D." may be expressed as A(nno) U(rbis) C(onditae) octingentēsimō tricēsimō primō or A.U.C. DCCCXXXI, 253 B.G. as A.U.C. DI.

Note 1.—A year A.D. may be turned into the corresponding year A.U.C. by adding 753 to its number, a year B.C. by subtracting its number from 754.

Note 2.—The following is a ready method of converting a Roman date into English. If the Roman date contains the word *Kal.*, add 2 to the number of days in the English month which you know the date will fall in, and from the sum subtract the number in the Roman date. Thus if the Roman date is a. d. IX. Kal. Apr., add 2 to 31 (the number of days in *March*) and subtract 9. $31 - 9 = 24$, and the English date is accordingly March 24.

If the Roman date contains the words *Idūs* or *Nōnās*, add 1 to the day on which the Ides or Nones fall in the month given, and from the sum subtract the number in the Roman date. Thus if the given date is a. d. V. Id. Mart., add 1 to 15 (the day on which the Ides fell in March) and subtract 5, $16 - 5 = 11$, and the English date is accordingly March 11.

To convert English dates into Roman, find out first whether the Roman date will contain the words *Nōnās* or *Idūs*, or *Kālendās*. If *Nōnās* or *Idūs*, add 1 to the day on which the Nones or Ides fell, and subtract the number in the English date. The result will be the number required for the Roman date. Thus if the given date is July 3, add 1 to 7 (the day on which the Nones fall in July): $8 - 3 = 5$, and the Roman date is accordingly a. d. quintum Nōnās Quinctilēs. If the Roman date will contain the word *Kālendās*, add 2 to the number of days in the English month given, and subtract from this sum the number in the English date. The result will be the number required for the Roman date. Thus if the given date is Jan. 18, add 2 to 31 (the number of days in Jan.): $33 - 18 = 15$, and the Roman date is accordingly a. d. quintum decimum Kālendās Fēbruāriās.

87.

Turn the following dates into Latin, giving the year A.U.C. No abbreviations must be used.

1. Jan. 3, 1890.

3. May 9, B.C. 72.

2. March 6, B.C. 15.

4. Sept. 24, B.C. 14.

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 5. April 18, B.C. 32. | 23. June 2, 1688. |
| 6. Feb. 28, 1888. | 24. July 8, B.C. 18. |
| 7. Feb. 25, 1564. | 25. Aug. 12, B.C. 14. |
| 8. Oct. 6, 872. | 26. Oct. 9, 1849. |
| 9. June 17, B.C. 63. | 27. April 3, 1871. |
| 10. Dec. 18, 1661. | 28. May 6, B.C. 49. |
| 11. July 4, B.C. 29. | 29. Oct. 12, B.C. 89. |
| 12. Nov. 30, B.C. 19. | 30. June 10, 1313. |
| 13. March 12, 908. | 31. March 14, 1603. |
| 14. Feb. 19, A.D. 591. | 32. Feb. 12, 1200. |
| 15. Oct. 2, 1801. | 33. July 13, B.C. 41. |
| 16. Aug. 21, B.C. 7. | 34. Dec. 25, B.C. 37. |
| 17. May 3, B.C. 91. | 35. Sept. 1, B.C. 97. |
| 18. July 6, B.C. 65. | 36. Nov. 15, B.C. 17. |
| 19. Feb. 24, 1680. | 37. Dec. 5, B.C. 31. |
| 20. July 5, 1456. | 38. Nov. 13, B.C. 19. |
| 21. May 14, B.C. 72. | 39. May 12, 1717. |
| 22. March 10, B.C. 68. | 40. March 10, 1848. |

88.

Turn the following dates into English :—

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. a. d. X Kal. /ān. | 15. a. d. VII. Id. Oct. |
| 2. a. d. III. Nōn. Dec. | 16. a. d. XV. Kal. Sext. |
| 3. a. d. V. Nōn. Quīnct. | 17. a. d. XIII. Kal. Māi. |
| 4. a. d. XIV. Kal. Dec. | 18. prid. Nōn. Sept. |
| 5. a. d. V. Id. Mārt. | 19. a. d. VII. Kal. Apr. |
| 6. a. d. XIII. Kal. Māi. | 20. a. d. VI. Kal. Dec. |
| 7. prid. Id. Mārt. | 21. a. d. IV. Nōn. /ān. |
| 8. a. d. IV. Id. Māi. | 22. a. d. V. Nōn. Oct. |
| 9. a. d. V. Id. Sext. | 23. a. d. IV. Id. Quīnct. |
| 10. a. d. XI. Kal. /ān. | 24. prid. Id. Sext. |
| 11. prid. Nōn. Māi. | 25. a. d. III. Nōn. Fēbr. |
| 12. a. d. III. Nōn. Fēbr. | 26. a. d. XV. Kal. Oct. |
| 13. a. d. VIII. Kal. Mārt. | 27. a. d. XVI. Kal. /ān. |
| 14. prid. Id. Quīnct. | 28. a. d. XVII. Kal. Apr. |

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 29. a. d. XIX. Kal. Jún. | 35. a. d. VI. Id. Māi. |
| 30. a. d. XI. Kal. Sept. | 36. a. d. IV. Id. Dec. |
| 31. prid. Nōn. Oct. | 37. a. d. IV. Nōn. Mārt. |
| 32. a. d. XIX. Kal. Sext. | 38. a. d. V. Id. Sext. |
| 33. a. d. XIV. Kal. Māi. | 39. a. d. III. Nōn. Sext. |
| 34. a. d. XII. Kal. Nōv. | 40. a. d. IV. Id. Nōv. |

TRANSLATION OF READING EXERCISES.

- (b) 1. A swift foot. My father! For thy army.
 2. That huge anvil. Why dost thou not wish this thing?
 3. Look you, a high mountain!
 4. A large beam. Do you bid me go out?
 5. We (people) live on these terms. I have often taken an onion. I begin.
 6. Throw away the rice. This year. This old lady.
 7. Few things. Thou art (*i.e.*, livest) because thou eatest. Ah me!
 8. Phoebus being angry. Mayst thou never be absent!
 9. To whom (is it) a profit? The thyrsus of Bacchus. Like a cup.

(c) All Gaul is divided into three parts, one of which the Belgae inhabit, another the Aquitāni, the third the people who are called Celtae in their own tongue, Galli in ours. All these differ from one another in language, customs, and laws. The river Garumna divides the Galli from the Aquitāni.

(d) Of these, the bravest are the Belgae, because they are the furthest distant from the civilisation and cultivation of the Province, and merchants by no means visit them frequently and import those things which tend to effeminate men's minds, and they are nearest to the Germāni who live across the Rhine, with whom they carry on war incessantly.

(e) Every lover serves as a soldier, and the God of Love has a camp of his own. Believe me, Atticus, every lover serves as a soldier. The age which is suited to war suits love as well. An old man a soldier is an unseemly thing,

and an unseemly thing is the love of an old man. Both spend the night awake; both rest upon the ground. The one keeps guard at the doors of his mistress, the other at those of his general. Long marching is the soldier's duty: send away a maiden, and the lover untiring will follow her without end (*ſit.*, the end being taken away).

VOCABULARY.

VOCABULARY.

(All vowels not marked long are to be pronounced short.)

A.
 be-able, possum, *irreg.*
 about, dē.
 above, sup̄er, sup̄rā (acc.).
 from-above, dēsup̄er.
 in-absence, *use* absēns.
 absent, absēns, -entis.
 be-absent, absum.
 absolutely, omnīnō; plānē
 abstain, abstīnēō, -tentum, 2
 (with abl. of thing abstained
 from, and often with reflexive
 pronoun as object of the
 verb).
 abuse, abūtor, -ūsus, 3.
 accompanied, cōmitātus.
 accomplice, cōscius.
 accomplish, cōnficiō; perficiō; ef-
 ficiō, (-ficere, -fēcī, -fectum) 3.
 accomplishment, ars, *f.*
 account, rātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
 on-account-of, ob.
 accuse, accūsō, 1; insimulō, 1.
 be-accustomed, solēō, -itussum (*in*
act. sense), 2.
 Achilles, Achillēs, -is.
 acorn, glāns, glandis, *m.*
 acquire, acquirō, -sivī, -sītum, 3.
 acquit, -absolvō, -solvi, -solūtum,
 3 (*with* gen. or dē and abl.).
 acre, iūgerum.
 across, trāns.
 act, agō, ēgī, āctum, 3.
 actor, histriō, -ōnis, *m.*

address, compellō, 1.
 admire, admiror, 1.
 admit, admittō, -mīsī, -missum, 3.
 advance, prōcēdo, -ssī, -ssum, 3;
 incēdō.
 advantage, bōnum, commodum,
 emolumentum.
 adversity, rēs adversae, pl.
 advice, cōsiliū, -li.
 advise, suādēō, suāsi, -sum, 2.
 Aeneas, Aenē-ās, -ae.
 Aeneid, Aenē-is, -idis, *f.*
 be-afraid, metuō, 3; timeō, 2;
 vereor, 2.
 affairs, rēs (pl.), *f.*
 affirm, affirmō, 1.
 after (*adv.*), post, postea; (*i.e.*
according to), secundum (acc.)
 — (*prep.*) post (acc.).
 afterwards, postea, post.
 again, iterum, rursus.
 against, contrā (acc.).
 Agamemnon, Agamemnō, -ōnis,
 -ōnā.
 ago, abhinc (*the time in* abl. or
 acc.); ante, *with* acc. of *the*
 time.
 agree, assentior, -sēnsus, 4.
 it-is-agreed, constat.
 air, āēr, -ēris, -ēra, *m.*
 upper-air, aethēr, -ēris, ēra, *m.*
 Alexander, Alexand-er, -rī.
 all, omnis; (*i.e. the whole*)
 tōtus.

all-is-over with, *actum est* dē.
 allay, *sēdō*, 1.
 it-is-allowed, *licet*, 2.
 almost, *paene*.
 alone, *sōlus*.
 along, *use* ablative.
 Alps, *Alpēs*, -ium.
 already, *iam*.
 also, *quōque* (*follows the word it emphasises*); *etiam*.
 alternate, *alternus*.
 although, *see* Ex. 72.
 altogether, *omnino*.
 always, *semper*.
 be-amazed, *miror*, 1.
 among, *inter* (acc.).
 ambassador, *lēgāt-us*, -ī.
 ancient, *antiquus*; *vētus*, *irreg.*
 and, *see* Ex. 41.
 angrily, *irātē*.
 angry, *irātus*.
 be-angry, *irāscor*, -fus, 3.
 animal, *animāl*, -ālis, *n.*
 ankle, *tālus*, -ī, *m.*
 Anne, *Anna*.
 announce, *nūtiō*, 1.
 another, *alius*; (*of two*) *alter*.
 answer (*subst.*), *respōnsum*.
 — (*verb*), *respondēō*, -ī, -ōnsum, 2.
 ant, *formica*, *f.*
 Antonius, *Antōnius*, *gen.* *Antōnī*.
 anvil, *incūs*, -dis, *f.*
 any, *see* Ex. 38.—N.B. *quisquam* is *defective*.
 apartment, *conclāve*, -is, *n.*
 ape, *sīmia*, *f.*
 apiece, *use* distrib. numeral.
 Apollo, *Apollō*, -īnis.
 apostle, *apostolus*, -ī.

appear (*be visible*), *appāreō*, 2;
 (*seem*) *videor*, *visus*, 2.
 appearance, *spēcīēs*, *f.*
 Appian, *Appius*.
 apple, *mālum*, *n.*
 appoint, *cōstituō*, 3; (*to an office*) *crēō*, 1.
 approach, *accēdō*, -ssī, -ssum, 3
 (*with* *ad* or acc. only).
 archer, *sagittārius*.
 Argive, *Argīvus*.
 Argos, *Argī*, pl.
 arise (*of a storm*), *co-orior*,
 -ortus, 4.
 arm (*limb*), *bracchium*, *n.*
 arms (*weapons*), *arma*, pl.
 arm (*verb*), *armō*, 1.
 army, *exercitūs*, -ūs, *m.*
 arouse (*thirst*), *collīgō*, -lēgī, 3.
 arrival, *adventus*, -ūs, *m.*
 arrive, *advēniō*, -vēnī, 4; per-
 vēniō.
 arrow, *sagitta*, *f.*
 art, *ars*, -tis, *f.*
 as, *ut*; (*after tam*) *quam*.
 as-far-as, *tēnus* (abl., *rarely*
gen.).
 as-great as, *tantus quantus*.
 as-if, *tamquam* (subj.); *quāsi*
 (subj.).
 as-many as, *tot quot*.
 as-often as, *tōtiēns quōtiēns*.
 ascend, *ascendo*, -dī, -sum, 3.
 mountain-ash, *ornus*, -ī, *f.*
 ashes (*of fire*), *cīnis*, -ēris, *m.*
 be-ashamed, *pūdet*, 2 (acc. of
 person, *gen.* of mental ob-
 ject).
 ask, *rōgō*, 1.
 ass, *asinus*, -ī.
 by-assault, *vī*.
 assemble, *convēniō*, -vēnī, 4.

assent, assentior, -sus, 4.
assist, āivō (acc.) subvēniō,
 -vēnī, 4 (*with* dat.).
assuredly, prōfectō.
at, ad (acc.); *or use a* locative
or abl.
at-length, tandem.
Athens, Athēnae, pl., *f*.
attach, adscī-sco, -vī, -tum, 3.
attack, adōrior, -tus, 4 (acc.);
 aggrēdior, -grēssus, 3; *some-*
times pētō, -ivī, -itum, 3.
attain-to, adipīscor, -eptus, 3;
 cōnsēquor, -cūtus, 3.
attempt, cōnor, 1 (*with* inf.);
 nitor, nixus *or* nīsus, 3 (*with*
 ut).
attendant, satellēs, -ītis, *m*.
or f.
pay-attention, operam dō, dēdī,
 dātum, dāre.
audacious, audāx, -ācis.
audacity, audācia, *f*.
author, auctor, -ōris, *m. or f*.
authority, auctōritās, *f*; pōt-
 estās, *f*.
auxiliaries, auxīlia, pl.
avarice, avāritia, *f*.
avenge, ulcīscor, ultus, 3.
avoid, vitō, 1.
awaken (*intrans.*) expērgīscor,
 -perrēctus, 3.
be-away, absum.
axe, secūris, *f*.

B.

bachelor, caelebs, -ībis.
back, āversus (*adj.*); tergum, *n*.;
 tergus, -oris, *n*.

bad, mālus.
badly, mālē.
baggage, impedimenta, pl.
ball, pīla, *f*.
banquet, epulae, pl.; con-
 vivium, *n*.
barbarian, barbārus.
barber, tōnsor, -ōris.
bare, nūdus, nūdātus.
bargain, pācīscor, pepīgī, 3.
bark, latrō, 1.
barley, hordeum.
barn, horreum.
base, turpis.
baseness, turpitudō.
basin, pelvis, *f*.
basket, corbis, *f*.
battle, pūgna, proelium.
be-away, absum.
beam, āibar, -āris, *n*.
bean, fāba.
bear, fērō, tūli, lātum, ferre.
beard, barba.
beast, pecus, -ūdis, *f*.
beat, caedō, cecidī, caesum, 3.
beat-the-breast, plango, -nxi,
 3.
beautiful, pulcher.
beauty, pulchritūdō, -inis, *f*.;
 forma.
because, quod; quia.
become, fiō, factus sum, fieri.
it-becomes, } dēcet.
is-becoming, }
bedroom, cubiculum.
bee, apis, *f*.
beech, fāgus, -ī, *f*.
before (*adv.*), antēā, prius.
 — (*prep.*), ante.
 — (*before-that*, *conj.*), ante-
 quam, priusquam.
beg, rōgō, 1.

beggared, egēns.
 begin, coepī (*in pres. sense*);
 ōrdior, ōrsus, 4.
 beginning, principium.
 behave, mē agō, ēgī, āctum, 3.
 behind, post, pōne.
 behold, cōspiciō, -spexī, 3.
 — (*interjection*), ecce, ēn.
 believe, crēdō, -didī, 3.
 below, inf̄rā; sub; subter.
 bend, flectō, -xī, -xum, 3.
 benefit, prōsum, prōdesse.
 bereave, orbō, 1.
 berry, bāca.
 beset, obseō, -sēdī, -sēssum, 2;
 circumvēniō, -vēnī, 4.
 betray, prōdō, -didī, 3.
 between, inter (acc.).
 beyond, ultrā (acc.).
 bid, iubeō, iussī, 2 (with inf.);
 imperō (*with ut*), 1.
 bill, rogātiō.
 bind, vinciō, -nxi, -nctum, 4.
 bird, avis, *f.*; volucris, *f.*
 birth-day, diēs nātālis.
 bit, frēnum.
 bite, mōrsus, -ūs, *m.*
 — mordeō, momordī, mōr-
 sum, 2.
 black, niger, -gra; āter, -tra.
 bladder, vēsica.
 blame, reprehendo, -dī, -sum, 3;
 accūsō, 1.
 blaze, ardeō, -sī, 2; cōnfia-
 grō, 1.
 blessing, bōnum.
 blind, caecus.
 blood, sanguis, -inis, *m.*
 bloody, sanguineus.
 blow, flō, 1.
 blunt, hebes, ētis.
 boar, aper, apri, *m.*

boast, glōrior, 1 (dē and abl., or
 abl. alone).
 boat, linter, -tris, *f.*
 body, corpus, -ōris, *n.*
 bold, audāx, -ācis.
 bone, os, ossis, *n.*
 book, liber, -brī, *m.*
 be-born, nāscor, nātus, 3.
 both . . . and, et . . . et; que
 . . . et; que . . . que.
 — (*pron.*), ambō, -ae, -ō.
 bottom, fundus, -ī, *m.*; imus
 (*adj.*).
 bow, arcus, -ūs, *m.*
 boy, puer.
 branch, rāmus, -ī, *m.*
 brave, fortis, animōsus.
 bravely, fortiter, ācritēr.
 brazen, æneus.
 bread, pānis, *m.*
 break, frangō, -ēgī, -āctum, 3;
 rumpo, rūpī, 3; (*legs*) suf-
 fringō.
 — -down (*intrans.*), dēficiō,
 -fēcī, -fectum, 3.
 breast, pectus, -ōris, *n.*
 breathe, } spirō, 1; anhelō,
 — out, } 1.
 breeze, aura; flātus, -ūs, *m.*
 bribery, ambitus, -ūs, *m.*
 brick, lāter, -eris, *m.*
 bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
 brief, brevis.
 brigand, lātrō, -ōnis.
 bright, clārus; splendidus.
 bring, ferō, tulī, lātum, ferre;
 afferō; (*to an end*) finem faciō;
 with dat.; (*to shore*), appellō,
 -pūli, -pulsum, 3; (*witness*),
 prōferō; citō, 1; adhibeō.
 2.
 Britain, Britannia.

broad, lātus.
brother, frāter, -tris.
bronze, āeneus.
Brutus, Brūtus.
brutal, inhūmānus; immānis.
brutality, immānitās, *f*.
build, aedificō; cōstruō, -ūxi,
 -ūctum, 3.
building, aedificium.
bull, taurus, -i.
bullet, glāns, -dis, *m*.
bullock, āuencus, -i.
burn, ūrō, ūssi, ūstum, 3.
 — **-up**, combūrō, 3.
burst, disruptō, -rūpi, -rup-
 tum, 3.
 — **-forth**, ērumpō, prō-
 rumpō, 3.
bury, sepeliō, -iui, sepultum, 4.
bushel, modius, -i, *m*.
business, negōtium.
but, *see* Ex. 42.
butcher, trucidō, i.
buy, ēmō, ēmi, emptum, 3;
 coēmō, 3.
by, ā; ab (abl.).
by-means-of, per (acc.).

C.

Cadiz, Gādēs, pl.
call, appellō, i.
calm, sēdō, i.
calmly, placidē.
camp, castra, pl.
can, possum, *irreg*.
candidate, candidātus, -i.
candidature, petitiō.
Cannae, Cannae, pl.
cannot, nōn possum; nequē,
 defect.

canvas, carbasus, -i, *f*.
capital charge, rēs (*or* noxa)
 capitālis; caput, -itis, *n*.
captain, centuriō, -ōnis.
captive, captivus, -i.
capture, capiō, cēpi, captum, 3.
care, cūra.
take-care, cūrō, i (*with* ut); (*be-*
 ware), caveō, cāvī, cautum, 2
 (*with* ut *and* nē).
care-for, cūrō, i.
carry, fērō, tūli, lātum, ferre;
 (*a message*) perferō; (*a ditch or*
 wall) dūcō, 3.
 — **-away**, auferō, abstulī, ab-
 lātum, auferre.
 — **-off**, ferō; reportō, i.
 — **-on**, gerō, gessi, gestum, 3.
 — **-round**, circumducō, 3.
Carthaginian, Karthāginiēnsis.
Carthage, Karthāgō, -inis, *f*.
carve, sculptō, -psi, -ptum, 3.
case, causa.
Castor, Castor, -ōris.
cat, felis, *f*.
catapult, ballista.
Catiline, Catilīna.
catch, opprimō, -pressī, -sum,
 3.
Cato, Cātō, -ōnis.
cause, causa.
caution, cautiō, -ōnis, *f*.
cautious, cautus.
cautiously, cautē.
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m*.; equitēs,
 pl.
cease, dēsīnō (-stitī), -situm, 3.
celestials, caelicōlae.
sensor, cēnsor, -ōris.
centurion, centuriō.
certain (*pronoun*), quīdam.
it-is-certain, cōstat.

challenge, prōvocō, 1; lacerō,
-ivī, -itum, 3.
character, mōrēs, pl.
charge (*of soldiers*), impetum
faciō; concurrō, 3.
— (*accuse*), accūsō, 1.
— (*accusation*), crimen; *see*
capital-charge.
chariot, currus, -ūs, *m*.
charm, dēlectō, 1.
charming, (*of places*) amoenus; (*of*
people) venustus.
chase, agō, ēgī, āctum, 3.
cheap, *use* parvi.
so-cheap, tantulō.
cheerful, laetus; alacer, -cris,
-cre.
cheese, cāseus, -ī, *m*.
cherry, cerasum, *n*.
chicken, pullus, -ī, *m*.
chide, increpitō, 1.
chief } dux, dūcis; impe-
chieftain } rātor.
child, puer; infāns: children,
liberī (*no Sing.*).
childish, puerilis.
chin, mentum.
choose, optō, 1.
Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis.
citizen, civis, -is.
city, urbs, urbis, *f*.
clang (*subst.*), clangor, -ōris,
m.
— (*verb*), resonō, 1.
clap, plaudō, -sī, -sum, 3.
clashing, crepitus, -ūs, *m*.
class, gēnūs, -eris, *n*.
claw, unguis, -is, *m*.
clear, serēnus.
clever, soilers, -tis; versūtus.
climate, caelum.
climb, ascendō, -ī, -sum, 3.

clip, tondeō, totondī, tōnsūm, 2.
close, claudō, -sī, -sum, 3.
clothes, vestis, *f*; vestimenta,
pl.
cloud, nūbēs, -is, *f*.
coin, flō, 1.
cold, frigus, -ōris, *n*.
— (*adj.*), gelidus; frigidus.
collar-bone, iugulum.
collect, colligō, -ēgī, 3.
colour, cōlor, -ōris, *m*.
comb, pectō, -xī, -xum, 3.
come, vēniō, vēnī, ventum, 4.
— -on, appropinquō, 1.
— -up, subeō, *irreg.*; succēdō,
-ssī, 3.
command, imperō, 1 (*with* ut);
rubeō, -iūssī, -ssum, 2 (*with*
inf.).
— (*troops*), praesum (*with*
dat.).
commit (*crime*), admittō, -sī,
-ssum, 3.
companion, cōmes, -itis.
compel, cōgō, cōēgī, cōāctum,
3.
competition, contentiō, -ōnis, *f*.
complain, queror, questus, 3.
— -of, accūsō.
complete, expleō, -vī, 2; per-
ficiō, 3.
complimentary, amplius.
comrade, sodālis; contubernālis.
conceal, tēgō, -xī, -ctum, 3; cēlō,
1.
it-concerns, interest; rēferat.
condemn, damnō, 1; condemnō,
1.
confess, cōnfiteor, -fessus, 2;
fateor, fassus, 1.
be-confident, cōnfidō, 3.
conflict, certāmen, -inis, *n*.

conquer, vincō, vicī, victum, 3.
conqueror, victor.
consider (*to be*), dūcō, 3; habeo,
 2.
conspiracy, conŭrātiō.
conspirator, conŭrātus [*not*
 -tor].
conspire, conŭrō, 1.
consul, cōsul, -is.
consulship, cōsulātus, -ūs, *m*.
consult, cōsulō, -uī, -ultum, 3
 (acc.)
consummate, summus.
contented, contentus.
contract (*to do work*) con-
 dūcō, 3.
give-out-under-contract, locō, 1.
contractor, redemptor, -ōris.
contrary, contrārius.
contrive, comminiscor, -mentus,
 3.
control, use moderātor (*con-*
troller).
converse, colloquor, -cūtūs, 3.
convict, convinco, -vicī, 3.
cool, gelidus.
copper, aes, aeris, *n*.
Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, *f*.
corn, frūmentum.
corpse, cadāver, -eris, *n*.
correctly, accurātē.
corrupt, corrupō, -rūpī, 3.
corselet, lōrica.
cost, stō, stetī, 1.
cough, tussis, -is, *f*.
count, numerō, 1.
countless, innumerābilis.
country (*region*), terra; regiō,
f.
 — (*not town*), rūs, rūris, *n*.
 — (*native*), patria.
 — **-house**, villa.

courage, animus; virtūs, -tūtis,
f.
courageous, ācer.
course, cursus, -ūs, *m*.
courteous, hūmānus.
courtier, purpurātus.
cover, tegō, -xī, -ctum, 3; co-
 operō, -uī, -tum, 4.
covert, dūmētum.
covet, concupiscō, -vī, 3.
covetous-of, avidus, cupidus.
cow, vacca.
cowardice, ignāvia.
cowardly, ignāvus.
craft (*cunning*), dolus, -ī, *m*.
 — (*occupation*), ars, -tis, *f*.
crafty, dolōsus, astūtus.
crane, grūs, grūis, *f*.
crawl, rēpō, -psī, 3.
creak, strīdō, -dī, 2; stridō, 3.
crime, facinus, -ōris, *n*; scelus,
 -eris, *n*.
crop, seges, -etis, *f*.
cross,
 — **-over**, } transeō, -iī, ire,
crow, cornix, -icis, *f*.
crowd, turba, frequentia.
crowded, frēquēns (*adj.*).
crown, diadēma, -tis, *n*; corōna.
cruel, crūdēlis.
crush, opprimō, -pressī, 3;
 obterō, -trivī, 3.
cry-out, clāmō, 1; clāmitō, 1.
with-this-cry, say 'crying out
 these things.'
cull, legō, lēgī, 3; carpō, -psī, 3.
culprit, nocēns; noxius.
cultivate, colō, -uī, cultum, 3.
cunning, astūtia.
cup, pōculum.
Cūriō, -ōnis.
custom, mōs, mōris, *m*.

cut, secō, -uī, sectum, 1; caedo,
 cecidi, caesum, 3.
 — away, abscidō, -dī, -sum, 3.
 — down, excidō, 3; caedō, 3.
 Cyprus, -ī, *f*.

D.

dagger, sica.
 daily, cottidiē.
 daintiness, fastidium.
 damage, damnum; dētrimentum.
 dance, saltō, 1; tripudiō, 1.
 danger, periculum.
 dangerous, periculōsus.
 dare, audeō, ausus sum 2.
 dark (*sky*, &c.), obscurus; cālī-
 ginōsus; (*complexion*) niger;
 fuscus.
 darkness, tenebrae, pl.
 daughter, filia.
 day, diēs, *m*. or *f*. in sing., *m*. in
 pl.
 two-days, biduum.
 three-days, triduum.
 daybreak, lux; -cis, *f*.; prima
 lux; dilūculum.
 dead, mortuus.
 dear, cārus; *to buy so-dear*, tantū
 emere.
 death, mors, -tis, *f*.; (*violent*)
 nex, -cis, *f*.
 debt, aes [-ris] aliēnum.
 deceit, fraus, -dis, *f*.
 deceive, dēcipiō, -cēpi, -cep-
 tum, 3.
 decide, dēcernō, -crēvī, -crē-
 tum, 3.
 declare, affirmō, 1; assevērō, 1.
 decree, dēcernō, -crēvī, -crē-
 tum, 3.

deed, factum; facinus, -oris, *n*.;
 gesta, pl.
 deep, altus.
 defeat, vincō, vicī, victum, 3;
 dēvincō.
 defence, praesidium, tūēla.
 defend, dēfendō, -dī, -sum, 3;
 tegō, -xī, -ctum, 3.
 defendant, reus, -ī.
 delay, moror, 1.
 delight (*subst.*), dēliciae, pl.;
 gaudium.
 delight (*verb*), dēlectō, 1.
 deliver (*speech*), habeō, 2; prō-
 nūntiō, 1.
 demand, postulō, 1; flāgitō, 1.
 Demosthenes, Dēmōsthenēs, -is.
 deny, negō, 1.
 depart, abeō, -iī, -īre; exeō.
 departure, abitus, -ūs, *m*.; dis-
 cēssus, -ūs, *m*.
 deprive, prīvō, 1; spōliō, 1;
 orbō, 1.
 descended-from, oriundus; prōg-
 nātus.
 descent, dēscēnsus, -ūs, *m*.
 desert, dēserō, -uī, -sertum, 3.
 deserter, perfuga, *m*.
 design, cōnsilium, -iī.
 desirable, optābilis; expetendus.
 desire, cupiō, -ivī, -itum, 3.
 desirous, cupidus; appetēns.
 despair, dēspērō, 1.
 despise, contemnō, -mpsī,
 -mptum, 3; spernō, sprēvī, 3.
 destitute, inops, -opis; egēns;
 expers, -tis.
 destroy, perdō, -didī, 3; perimō,
 -ēmī, 3.
 destruction, perniciēs, -ēī, *f*.;
 exitium.
 destructive, *use* dētrimentum.

devise, excōgitō, 1; com-
mentor, 1.
devoid, expers, -tis.
be-devoid, careō, 2.
devoted-to, studiōsus.
devour, comēdō, -ēdi, ēsum, 3.
dictator, dictātor.
dictatorship, dictātūra.
die, morior, mortuus, 3.
different, alius *with* atque or
ac.
difficult, difficilis.
dig, fōdio, fōdi, fōssum, 3.
— out, effōdiō, 3.
dine (*midday*), prandeō, prānsus
sum, 2; (*evening*) cēnō, 1.
dinner, prandium; cēna.
Diomede, Diomēdēs, -is.
direct, rēctus.
direction (*one-in-one*, &c.), alius
aliō (or aliā).
disaster, clādēs, -is, *f*.
discharge (*missile*), mīttō, mīsī,
mīssum, 3; ēmittō.
discover, invēniō, -vēnī, -ven-
tum, 4.
disgrace, dēdecus, -ōris, *n*.
disgrace (*verb*), dēdecorō, 1;
dēhonestō, 1.
disgraceful, turpis; foedus.
it-disgusts, piget; taedet.
dismiss, dimittō, -mīsī, -ssum, 3.
disobey, repugnō; adversor, 1.
displease, displiceō, 2.
disposition, indolēs, -is, *f*.
dissimilar, dissimilis.
be-distant, dīstō, 1.
distinguish, discernō, -crēvī, -crē-
tum, 3.
disturb, perturbō, 1.
disturbance, turba; tumultus,
-ūs, *m*.

L

ditch, fōssa.
divine, divīnus.
do, faciō, fēcī, factum, 3; agō,
ēgī, āctum, 3; (*an office*) fun-
gor, -nctus, 3.
doctor, medicus, -I.
dog, cānis, -is, *m*.
doings, gesta, pl.; facta, pl.
door, rānua.
dormouse, glīs, glīris, *m*.
doubt, dubitō, 1.
is-no-doubt, nōn est dubium
(*adj.*).
doubtless, nīmīrum.
dowry, dōs, dōtis, *f*.
drag, trahō, trāxī, -ctum, 3.
draught, pōtus, -ūs, *m*.
draw (*sword*), dēstringō, -nxī,
-ctum, 3.
— (*water*), hauriō, -sī, -stum,
4.
— lots, sortior, 4.
dread, timeō, 2; metuō, 3.
dreadful, terribilis; horribilis.
dream, somnium.
drink, bībō, -bī, bibitum, 3.
— (*subst.*), pōtus, -ūs, *m*.
drive, pellō, pepulī, pulsum, 3.
— back, repellō, reppulī, 3.
— from, expellō, expulī, 3.
drop (*from mouth*), ōre dēmīttō,
-mīsī, -mīssum, 3.
drown (*intrans.*), in aquā pereō,
-iī, -īre; fluctibus haurior.
drunk, ēbrius.
duck, anās, anātis, *f*.
dust, pulvis, -eris, *m*.
duty, officium; mūnus, -eris,
n.
dwell }
— in } habitō, 1.
dye, tinguō, -nxī, -nctum, 3.

E.

each, quisque.
 — of two, uterque.
 — other, alius alium; alter
 alterum; inter sē.
 eager-for, avidus; cupidus.
 eagle, aquila, *f.*
 ear, auris, -is, *f.*
 early, mātūrē.
 earnestly
 with-earnest- } acriter; impēnsē;
 ness } strēnuē.
 earth, terra; tellūs, -ūris, *f.*
 on-the-earth, humī.
 ease, ōtium.
 easily, facile.
 easy, facilis.
 eat } ēdō, ēdī, ēsum, 3.
 — away }
 effect, efficiō, -fēcī, -fectum, 3.
 effort, nīsus, -ūs, *m.*
 egg, ōvum.
 Egypt, Aegyptus, -ī, *f.*
 eight, octō.
 eighteen, duodēvigintī.
 eighty, octōgintā.
 either, aut; vel. See Ex. 41.
 elephant, elephās, -ntis.
 eleven, ūndecim.
 elm, ulmus, -ī, *f.*
 eloquence, ēloquentia; dicendī
 vis.
 eloquent, ēloquēns, disertus.
 eloquently, disertē.
 embezzlement, peculātus, -ūs,
m.
 emperor, princeps, -ipis.
 employ, ūtor, ūsus, 3.
 encourage, animum (animōs),
 cōfirmō (ī), or ērigō, ērēxī,

end, finis, -is, *m.*; extrēmus
 (*adj.*).
 — (*verb trans.*), finem faciō
 with dat.
 endeavour, cōnor, *r.*
 endowed, praeditus.
 endure, patior, passus, 3; ferō,
 tūlī, lātum, ferre.
 enemy, hostis; (*of troops use*
pl.).
 energetic, prōmptus; ācer.
 engine, tormentum; māchīna.
 England, Anglia.
 engrave, incidō, -dī, -sum, 3.
 enjoy, fruor, 3.
 entangle, irrētīō, 4.
 enter, introeō, -ī, -ire; ingredior,
 -grēssus, 3.
 — into (*plans, &c.*), incō,
 with acc.
 enthusiastic, studiōsissimus, with
 gen.
 entirely, ōmnīnō; plānē.
 entreat, obsecrō, *r.*
 envy (*s.*), invidia.
 — (*v.*), invidēō, -vidī, 2 (*dat.*).
 Ephesus, Ephesus, -ī, *f.*
 equal, pār, pāris.
 equally, pariter; aequē.
 escape (*s.*), effugium.
 — (*v.*), effugiō, -fūgī, 3;
 ēvādō, -sī, 3.
 it-is-established, cōnstāt.
 estate, praedium; fundus, -ī, *m.*
 even, etiam; vel (*with substt.*
and superll. only).
 evening, vesper, -erī, *m.*
 ever, umquam; in sentences of
Indef. Frequency after sī use
quandō.
 for ever, in aeternum.
 everlasting, aeternus.

every, omnis; quisque; (*for every with numerals* see Ex. 39.)
 everywhere, ubique.
 evil, mālus.
 examine, perspicīō, -exī, 3.
 example, documentum.
 excel, praestō, -stiti, 1; exsuperō,
 1 (*both with acc.*).
 except, praeter (*prep.*); nīsi
 (*conjunct.*).
 exceptional, ēgrēgius.
 exchange, mūtō, 1 (*either of the things exchanged may be in the acc. with the other in the abl.*).
 excuse, pūrgō, 1.
 execute, secūri feriō or percutiō,
 -ssi, -ssum, 3.
 exercise, exerceō, 2 (*trans.*).
 expect, exspectō, 1.
 expensively, māgnō sūmptū.
 experienced, peritus (*with gen. or ad.*).
 explain, explicō, -ui, -itum (*and reg.*), 1.
 extraordinary, ēgrēgius; nōtiā-
 bilis.
 extremely, summē.
 extortion, pecūniae repetundae,
 pl. (*lit. money to be recovered*).
 exult, laetitiā gestiō, 4.
 eye, oculus.
 eyesight, aciēs, -ēī, f.

F.

face, faciēs, -ēī, f.; voltus, -ūs, m.
 (= the look on the face).
 fail (*of men*) dēsum; dēficiō,
 -fēci, 3 (*dat.*).
 fail (*of plans*), cādō, cecidī,
 cāsum, 3.

L 2

fair, pulcher.
 faith, fidēs, fidēī, f.
 faithful, fidelis, fidus.
 fall, cadō, cecidī, cāsum, 3.
 fall-on, incidō, -cidī, 3.
 false, falsus.
 family, use mei, tui, sui; coniūnx
 et liberi; domus; [*not familia, which means the slaves of a household.*]
 famous, clārus; illūstris; ille.
 far-from, prōcul.
 as-far-as, tēnus (*abl.*).
 farmer, agricola.
 fashion (*v.*), fingō, -nxī, -ctūm,
 3.
 fashion (*s.*), mōs, -ris, m.
 fast, celer.
 fasting, inēdia.
 fat, pinguis.
 fate, fātum.
 father, pāter, -tris.
 — in-law, sōcer, -erī.
 fatherland, patria.
 fault, culpa.
 favour, fāveō, fāvi, fantum, 2.
 offer-favourable-sacrifice, litō, 1.
 fear (*v.*), timeō, 2; metuō, 3;
 vereor (nē), 2.
 — (*s.*), tīmor, -ōris, m.; metus,
 -ūs, m.
 fearful, atrōx, -ōcis; terribilis.
 feat, facinus, -ōris, m.; gesta, pl.
 feed, pāscō, -vi, -stum, 3.
 — on, vescor, 3.
 feel, sentiō, -si, -sum, 4.
 — joy, laetor, 1; gaudeō,
 gāvisus sum, 2.
 — pain, doleō, 2; dolet mihi.
 feeling, sēnsus, -ūs, m.
 fellow, homo; iste.
 fellow-soldier, commilitō, -ōnis.

festival, solleune, *n.*; diēs fēstus.
 fetter, compēs, -ēdis, *m.*: *use pl.*
 fever, febris, -is, *m.*
 few, pauci.
 field, ager, -grī, *m.*
 fiercely, atrōciter; ferōciter.
 fifteen, quīndecim.
 fifty, quīnquāgintā.
 fight, pūgnō, *i.*
 find, inveniō; reperiō, repperi,
 repertum, *4.*
 fine, bellus.
 finish, cōficiō, -fēcī, -fectum, *3.*
 fire, ignis, -is, *m.*
 firmly, cōstanter.
 first (*adj.*), primus.
 — (*adv.*), primum; *sometimes*
 prius.
 fish (*s.*), piscis, -is, *m.*
 — (*v.*), piscor, *i.*
 fisherman, piscātor, -ōris, *m.*
 five, quinque.
 five-hundred, quīngentī.
 fix, figō, -xī, -xum, *3.*
 flame, flamma.
 flash, fulgēō, -sī, *2.*
 flatter, adūlor, *i*; assentor, *i.*
 flatterer, adūlātor; assentātor.
 flattery, adūlātiō; assentātiō.
 flee, fugiō, fugi, *3.*
 flee-away, aufugiō, *3.*
 fling, coniciō, -iēcī, -ctum, *3.*
 — -down, prōsternō, -strāvi,
 -tum, *3.*
 flock, pecus, -oris, *n.*
 flock-round, concurro (*ad*), -i,
 -rsum, *3*; cōnfluō (*ad*), *3.*
 flood, eluviō, -ōnis, *f.*
 flow, fluō, -xī, -xum, *3.*
 flower, flōs, -ris, *m.*
 fly, volō, *i.*
 fly-round, circumvolitō, *i.*

foe, hostis.
 fold, ovile, -is, *n.*
 follow, sēquor, -cūtus.
 folly, stultitia.
 food, cibus, -ī, *m.*
 fool, stultus.
 foolish, stultus.
 foot, pēs, pēdis, *m.*
 — -ball, follis, *m.*
 — -pad, grāssātor.
 for (*conj.*), enim; nam; namque.
 — (*on behalf of*), prō (*abl.*).
 — (*after verbs of preventing,*
 &c.), prae (*abl.*).
 forbid, vētō, -uī, -itum, *i.*
 forces, cōpia, *pl.*
 forest, silva.
 forget, obliviscor, -itus, *3.*
 be-forgotten, dē memoriā excidō;
 oblivioni dari.
 forgetful, immemor.
 formerly, olim; quondam.
 fortune, fortuna.
 forty, quadrāgintā.
 forum, fōrum.
 foster, fōveō, fōvī, -tum, *2.*
 fountain, fōns, -tis, *m.*
 four, quattuor.
 fowler, auceps, -cūpis.
 fox, vulpēs, -is, *f.*
 fragment, frāgmentum.
 France, Gallia.
 fray, pūgna.
 free (*adj.*), liber, -era, -erum.
 — (*v.*), liberō, *i*; solvō, -i,
 -ūtum, *3.*
 be-free-from, vacō, *i.*
 friend, amicus, -ī.
 friendship, amicitia.
 frog, rāna, *f.*
 from, ā; ab; dē.
 — -above, dēsuper.

front, adversus (*adj.*).
 fruit, fructus, -ūs, *m.*
 fruitful, fructuosus; fertilis.
 fugitive, profugus; (*fem.*) profuga.
 full, plenus.
 fuller (*s.*), fullō, -ōnis.
 furious, furibundus; furēns.
 furniture, supellex, -ctilis, *f.*
 further, longius.
 fury, furor, -ōris, *m.*

G.

gaily, fēstivē; *see* gay.
 gain (*s.*), lūcrum.
 — (*v.*), acquirō, -sivī, -sītum, 3;
 cōsequor, -cūtus, 3; (*victory*)
 reportō, 1; (*vote*) ferō, tūlī,
 lātum, ferre.
 — -possession-of, potior (*abl.*),
 4.
 game, lūdus, -ī, *m.*
 garden, hortus, -ī, *m.*
 garland, corōna.
 garrison, praesidium.
 Gauls, Galli.
 gay, fēstivus; hilaris.
 gaze, intueor, 2.
 general, imperātor; dux, dūcis.
 generally, plerumque.
 genius, ingenium.
 ghost, umbra.
 giant, gigās, -ntis.
 gift, dōnum.
 girl, puella.
 give, dō, dēdī, dātum, dāre.
 give-out-under-contract, locō, 1.
 give-way, cēdō, -ssī, -ssum, 3;
 (*troops*), inclino (*intrans.* or
 reflex. pass.), 1.

glad, laetus.
 be glad, laetor, 1; gaudeō.
 gāvisus sum, 2.
 gladly, libenter; libēns (*adj.*)
 laetē.
 glitter, micō, 1; niteō, 2.
 glorious, clārus; praeclārus.
 glory, glōria; laus, -dis, *f.*
 gnaw, rōdō, -sī, -sum, 3.
 go, eō, ivī, itum, ire.
 — -away, abeō.
 — -in, ineō; ingredior, -ssus,
 3.
 — -out, exeō; ēgredior, -ssus, 3.
 goal, mēta.
 goblet, pōculum; scyphus, -ī, *m.*
 god, deus; caelestēs, pl.
 goddess, dea.
 gold, aurum.
 golden, aureus.
 good, bonus.
 goods, bona, pl.
 goose, ānser, -eris, *m.*
 govern, gubernō, 1; regō.
 gown, toga.
 grain, frūmentum.
 grammar, grammatica.
 grandfather, avus, -ī.
 grandson, nepōs, -ōtis.
 great-grandson, prōnepōs, -ōtis.
 grant, dō, dēdī, dātum, dāre;
 concēdō, -ssī, -ssum, 3.
 grapes, ūva, *f.*, *use* sing.
 grasp, prehēdō, -dī, -sum, 3;
 prēnsō, 1.
 great, māgnus.
 greatly, māgnopere; summē.
 greedily, avidē.
 greediness, aviditās.
 greedy, avidus; cupidus.
 Greek, Graecus; (*language*), lin-
 gua Graeca: *phr.*, Graecē discō.

grief, dolor, -ōris, *m.*; maeror, -ōris, *m.*
grieve, doleō, 2.
grind, molo, -uī, -itum, 3.
groan (*s.*), gemitus, -ūs, *m.*
 — (*v.*), gemō, -uī, -itum, 3.
ground, terra; humus, -ī, *f.*; solum.
on-the-ground, humī.
grow, crēscō, crēvī, 3.
 — **light**, lūcēscō, 3.
 — **old**, cōsensēscō, -sensuī, 3.
 — **tame**, mītescō.
 — **up**, adolēscō, -ēvī, adultum, 3.
guardian, praesēs, -idis; custōs, -ōdis.
guess, divīnō, 1; coniciō, -iēcī, -ctum, 3.
guest, hospēs, -itis.
guide, dux, dūcis.
guilty, sōns, -tis; noxius.

H.

hair, pilus (*a single hair*), -ī, *m.*; capillus, -ī, *m.* (*use sing. or pl.*); crinis, *m.* (*use pl.*).
half, dīmidium; dīmidia pars.
halt, cōsistō, -stitī, 3.
hammer, malleus, -ī, *m.*
hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
right-hand, dextera.
left-hand, sinistra.
hang-down, dēpendeō, -dī, 2 (*intrans.*).
 — **up**, suspendō, -dī, -sum, 3 (*trans.*).
Hannibal, Hannibal, -ālis.
happen, eveniō, -vēnī, -ventum, 4.

it happens that, accidit, 3; fit, factum est, fieri (ut).
happily, fēliciter.
happiness, fēlicitās.
happy, fēlix; beātus.
harbour, portus, -ūs, *m.*
hard, dūrus; difficilis.
hare, lepus, -ōris, *m.*
harm, noceō, 2 (dat.).
harmful, noxius.
harrow, rāstrum.
haste (*need of*), properātō opus.
hasten, properō, 1; festinō, 1.
hate, ōdī (perf. *in present sense*).
have, habeō, 2; *or use esse*.
hawk, accipiter, -tris, *c.*
head, cāput, -itis, *m.*
head of household, paterfamiliās (*gen. pairisfamiliās*).
headlong, praeceps, -cipitis.
heal, sālō, 1; medeor (dat.), 2.
health, valētūdō, -inis, *f.*
heap-up, coacervō, 1; accumulō, 1.
hear, audiō, 4; (*a case*) cōgnōscō, -vī, -itum, 3.
heart, cōr, cordis, *n.*
heat, calor, -ōris, *m.*
heaven, caelum.
from-heaven, caelitus (*adv.*).
be heedful, caveō, cāvī, cautum, 2.
height, altitūdō, -inis, *f.*
heir, hērēs, -ēdis.
helmet, galea.
helmsman, gubernātor; rēctor.
help (*s.*), auxilium; opem, acc.
help (*v.*), zūvō (acc.), zūvī, zūtum, 1; subveniō (dat.), -vēnī, -ventum, 4.
hemlock, cicūta.
her, eūs *or* eī, *if expressed at all*.

her-own, suus.
 herb, herba.
 Hercules, Herculēs, -is.
 herd, grex, -gis, *m.*; caterva.
 here, hīc.
 hereafter, posthāc; in reliquum.
 hero, hērōs, -ōis.
 hesitate, haesitō, *i*; animō fluctuō, *i*.
 hide, tegō, -xī, -ctum, *3*; abdō, -didī, *3*.
 high, altus: highest, sometimes summus.
 highly (to value, &c.), māgnī.
 hill, collis, *m.*; mōns, -tis, *m.*
 hinder, impediō, *4*; obstō; -stitī, *i* (dat.).
 hindrance, impedimentum.
 hinge, cardō, -inis, *m.*
 his, ēius or eī, if expressed at all.
 — -own, suus.
 hiss-off, explōdō, -sī, -sum, *3*.
 hold, teneō, *2*; obtineō, -tentum, *2*.
 — -peace, taceō, *2*.
 Holland, Batāvia.
 home, dōmus, -ūs, *f*.
 at-home, domī.
 Homer, Homērus.
 honest, probus.
 honesty, probitās.
 honey, mel, mellis, *n*.
 honour (*s.*), honōs, -ōris.
 — (*v.*), colō, -uī, cultum, *3*; honestō, *i*.
 honourable, honestus.
 honourably, honestē.
 hoop, trochus, -ī, *m*.
 hope (*s.*), spēs, spēī, *f*.
 — (*v.*), spērō, *i*.
 horn, cornū, -ūs, *n*.

horrible, horribilis; taeter, -tra, -trum.
 horse, equus, -ī.
 — -back, use simply equus.
 hostage, obses, -idis.
 hot, calidus.
 hour, hōra.
 house, domus, -ūs, *f*.
 at-house-of, apud (acc.),
 hover, circumvolitō, *i*.
 how! (exclam.), quam.
 how? (interrog.), quō modō.
 how (rel.), quō modō; quam.
 — -great } quantus.
 — -large }
 — -long (adv.), quamdiū.
 — -many, quot [not the pl. of quantus].
 for-how-much, quantī.
 however, tāmen.
 howl, ululō, *i*.
 huge, ingēns.
 human-being, hōmō, -inis, *c*.
 humble, humilis.
 hundred, centum.
 hunger, fāmēs, -is, *f*.
 hunt, vēnor, *i*.
 hunter, vēnātor.
 hurl, coniciō, -iēcī, -iectum, *3*; iaculor, *i*.
 hurt, noceō, *2* (dat.).

I.

Ides, Idūs, pl., *f*.
 idle, ōtiōsus.
 — (*v.*), cessō, *i*.
 idleness, cessātiō; ōtium; ignāvia.
 ignorance, īnscientia.
 ignorant, ignōrus; īnscius; indoctus.

be-ignorant, nesciō, 4; ignōrō, 1.
 be-ill, aegrōtō, 1.
 illustrious, insignis.
 imitate, imitor, 1.
 immediately, stātim, cōnfestim;
 prōtinus.
 immerse, mergō, -sī, -sum, 3.
 immortality, immortalitās.
 impious, impius; nefārius.
 implicated, particeps, -ipis;
 cōnsciūs.
 importance, auctōritās, *f*.
 it-is-of-importance, interest;
 rēfert.
 importune, flāgitō, 1.
 impose, impōnō.
 imprisonment, *use* vincula, pl.;
 custōdia, *f*.
 in, in; 'in Cicero' (*his works*),
 apud Cicerōnem.
 inactive, iners, -tis.
 increase (*trans.*), augeō, -xī,
 -ctum, 2.
 incredible, incredibilis.
 indeed, quidem.
 indulge } indulgeō, -sī, 2.
 be indulgent }
 infamous, flāgitiosus, infāmis.
 infant, infāns.
 infantry, peditātus, -ūs, *m*.;
 peditēs, pl.
 infirm of purpose, incertus sent-
 entiae; parum firmus.
 inflate, inflō, 1.
 influence, grātia.
 inform, certiorē faciō
 inhabit, habitō, 1.
 inhabitant, incola; civis, -is.
 be-injurious }
 injure } noceō, 2 (dat.).
 innocent, innocēns.
 inscription, titulus, -ī, *m*.

intend, in animō habeō, 2 (*with*
 inf.).
 is-to-interest-of, interest; rēfert.
 interrupt, interpellō, 1.
 be-intimate-with, ūtor familiāri-
 ter.
 into, in (acc.).
 Ireland, Hibernia.
 is-irksome, pīget.
 iron, ferrum.
 island, insula.
 Italy, Italia.
 ivory, ēbur, -ōris, *n*.

J.

jailor, cūrōs.
 Janiculum, Iāniculum.
 jar, olla.
 javelin, pilum; iaculum.
 jest, rōcus.
 jewel, gemma.
 join, serō, -uī, sertum, 3; iungō,
 -nxī, -nctum, 3.
 — battle, committō proelium,
 pūgnam.
 journey, iter, itineris, *n*.
 Jove, Iuppiter, Iōvis.
 joy, gaudium; laetitia.
 feel-joy, laetor, 1; gaudeō,
 gāvisus sum, 2.
 joyful, laetus; hilaris.
 judge, iūdex, -icis.
 in my judgment, mē iūdice; *or*
 use dat.
 Julius, Iūlius.
 July, Quinctilis (mēnsis, *m*.).
 jump, salio, -uī, 4.
 — across, trānsiliō.
 — down, dēsiliō.
 Juppiter, *see* Jove.

jury, iudicēs, pl.
 just, aequus; iustus.
 justly, iurē, abl.; (*deservedly*)
 meritō.

K.

Kalends, Kalendae, pl.
 keen, ācer.
 keenly, ācritēr.
 keep, habeo (mecum or mihi), 2;
 retineō, 2.
 — ignorant, cēlō, 1.
 key, clavis, f.
 kid, haedus, -ī, m.
 kill, occidō, -dī, -sum, 3.
 kind (s.), genus, -eris, n.
 of (all) kinds, omnis generis,
 (gen.); omne genus, (acc.).
 kind (adj.), benignus.
 kindle, incendō, -dī, -sum, 3.
 kindly, benignē.
 kindness (*the quality*), benigni-
 tās; (*an act*) beneficium.
 king, rēx, rēgis.
 kingdom, rēgnum.
 kinsman, necessārius.
 knife, culter, -trī, m.
 knock-down, affligō, -xī, -ctum,
 3.
 — off, dēciō, -zēci, -iectum,
 3.
 — out, excutiō, -ssi, -ssum,
 3.
 know, sciō, 4; nōvī (perf. *in*
present sense).
 not-know, nēsciō, 4.
 knowingly, prūdēns (adj.); prū-
 denter (adv.).
 without -knowledge - of, clam
 (abl.).

L.

labour (s.), labor, -ōris, m.
 — (v.), labōrō, 1.
 Lacedaemonian, Lacedaemōnius.
 lack, careō, 2 (abl.); egeō (abl. or
 gen.).
 ladder, scālae, pl.
 lake, lacus, -ūs, m.
 lame, claudus.
 lamp, lampas, -adis, f.
 land, terra.
 native-land, patria.
 landmark, terminus.
 language, lingua.
 large, māgnus; ingēns.
 last (v.), dūrō, 1; permaneō, -sī,
 2.
 late (adj.), tardus.
 — (adv.), sērō.
 lately, nūper, -erius, -errimē.
 Latin, Latīnus.
 laugh, rideō, -sī, -sum, 2.
 law, lēx, -gis, f.
 — court, iudicium.
 is-lawful, licet, 2.
 lay-down, pōnō, pōsuī, -itum, 3;
 dēpōnō.
 — low, sternō, strāvī, -tum, 3.
 lead, dūcō, 3.
 — across, trānsdūcō, 3.
 — away, abdūcō, 3.
 — out, ēdūcō, 3.
 leader, dux, dūcis.
 leaf, fōlium; frōns, -dis, f.
 leap (s.), saltus, -ūs, m.
 — (v.), salīō, -uī, -tum, 4.
 — down, dēsiliō, -uī, -sultum, 4.
 — over, trānsiliō, 4.
 learn, discō, didici, 3.
 learned, doctus.
 at-least, altem; quidem.

leave (*s.*), *venia*; *by your leave*,
pāce tuā.
 — (*v.*), *relinquō*, -*liquī*, -*ctum*,
 3; *dēsērō*, -*uī*, -*sertum*, 3.
 left, sinister; *laevus*.
 leg, *crūs*, -*ris*, *n*.
 legion, *legiō*, -*ōnis*, *f*.
 lend, *commodō*, 1; (*money*) *dāre*
mūtuam (*pecūniam*).
 length, *longitūdō*, -*inis*, *f*.
 at-length, *tandem*.
 less (*adj.*), *minor*; (*adv.*) *minus*.
 lest, *nē*.
 let-go, *manū ēmittō*, -*sī*, -*ssum*, 3;
 (*a man*) *dimitto*.
 letter, *litterae*, *pl.*; *epistula*.
 levy (*s.*), *dilēctus*, -*ūs*, *m*.
 — (*v.*), *scribō* (*militēs*), -*psī*,
 -*ptum*, 3; *dilēctum habeo*.
 liar, *mendāx*, -*cis*.
 Liberty, *Libertās*.
 liberal, *liberalis*.
 lie (*tell lies*), *mentior*, 4.
 — (*of place*), *iaceō*, 2.
 — down, *cubō*, 1.
 — in-wait-for, *insidior*, 1
 (*dat.*).
 life, *vita*.
 lift } *tollō*, *sustulī*, *sublā-*
 — up, } *tum*, 3.
 light (*adj.*), *levis*.
 — (*s.*), *lūx*, -*cis*, *f*.
 grow-light, *lucēscō*, 3.
 like, *similis* (*usually with gen. of*
persons resembled; otherwise
with gen. or dat.); (*conj.*)
ceu.
 likely, *vērī similis*.
 limb, *membrum*; *artus*, -*ūs*, *m.*,
pl. only.
 lion, *leō*, -*ōnis*.
 lip, *lābrum*.

literature, *litterae*.
 litter, *lectica*.
 little, *parvus*.
 too-little, *pārum* (*with gen.*).
 live, *vivō*, -*xī*, -*ctum*, 3; *vītam*
agō, *ēgī*, *āctum*, 3.
 live (*dwell*), *habitō*, 1.
 — on, *vescor*, 3.
 liver, *iecur*, *iecinoris*, *n*.
 living, *vivus*.
 lock, *sera*.
 lofty, *celsus*; *sublimis*.
 log, *stipēs*, -*itis*, *m*.; *tignum*.
 long (*v.*), *dēsiderō*, 1; *appetō*,
 -*ivī*, -*itum*, 3.
 — (*adj.*), *longus*.
 — (*adv.*), *diū*.
 too-long (*adv.*), *diūtius*.
 now for-a-long-time, *iam diū*;
iamdūdum; *iampridem*.
 long-ago, *iampridem*.
 longer (*adv.*), *diūtius*; *no longer*
haud amplius [neq. use longius
of time.]
 look-at, *aspiciō*, -*exī*, -*ectum*, 3.
 lose, *perdō*, -*idi*, -*itum*, 3;
āmittō, -*misi*, *missum*, 3.
 loss, *damnum*.
 lot, *sors*, -*tis*, *f*.
 draw-lots, *sortior*, 4
 loud, *māgnus*.
 love (*s.*), *amor*, -*ōris*, *m*.
 — (*v.*), *amō*, 1; *diligō*, -*ēxī*,
 -*ēctum*, 3.
 loveable, *amābilis*.
 loving, *amāns*.
 lowest, *infimus*.
 loyal, *fidēlis*; *fidus*.
 loyalty, *fidēs*, -*ēī*, *f*.
 lunch, *prandium*.
 Lupericalia, *Lūpercālia*.
 lurk, *lateō*, 2.

M.

mad, insānus ; āmēns.
 be **mad**, fūrō, 3.
madness, insānia, āmentia.
magic, magicus.
magistracy {
magistrate { magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*
maiden, virgō, -inis ; puella.
make, faciō, fēcī, factum, 3 ;
 (*speech*) habeo, 2 ; (*consul*, &c.)
 creō, 1 ; (*laws*) condō, -didī, 3.
man, homo, -inis ; *if* mankind *is*
meant, use pl.
many, multi.
Marathon, Marathōn, -ōnis,
march (v.), iter, itineris, *n.*
 — (*v.*), iter faciō.
marriage-torch, taeda.
marry (*of the man*), dūcō, 3.
 — (*of the woman*), nūbō, nūpsi,
 nūptum, 3 (dat.).
Mars, Mārs, -tis.
marsh, pālūs, -ūdis, *f.*
marvel-at, mīror, 1 ; admīror.
mast, mālūs, -ī, *m.*
master (*over a servant*), dominus.
 — (*who teaches*), magister.
matter, rēs, rēi, *f.*
mattock, ligō, -ōnis, *m.*
meaning, sēnsus, -ūs, *m.*
measure, mētor, mēnsus, 4.
meat, cārō, carnis, *f.*
meet, conveniō, -vēnī, -ventum,
 4 (acc.).
mellow, mītis.
melt (*intrans.*), liquefiō, -factus,
 -fiētī.
mend, corrigō, -rēxī, -rēctum, 3.
mercy, clēmēntia ; misericordia.
message {
messenger { nūntius.

method, via ; mōdus.
mid (*adj.*), medius.
middle, medium ; *if possible*, use
 medius, *adj.*
mighty, māgnus ; ingēns.
mile, mille passūs ; pl. mīlia
 (passuum).
military, militāris.
milk (*s.*), lāc, lactis, *n.*
 — (*v.*), mulgeō, -sī, 2.
Milo, Mīlō, -ōnis.
mindful, memor, -ōris.
miser, avārus.
miserable, mīser.
miserably, miserē.
misfortune, adversa fortūna ; rēs
 adversae ; *misfortunes*, incom-
 moda, pl.
miss, dēsiderō, 1.
missile, mīssile.
mode, mōdus, -ī, *m.*
moderate, mediocris.
moment, mōmentum.
money, pecūnia (pl. = *sums of*
money).
monster, bēlua.
month, mēnsis, *m.*
more (*adj.*), plūs.
 — (*adv.*), plūs ; māgis ; (*with*
 haud, nihil) amplius.
morning, māne, *adv.*
mortal, mortālis.
mortar, pīla.
most (*adj.*), plērique.
 — (*adv.*), potissimum.
mother, māter, -tris.
mould, fingo, -nxī, -ctum, 3.
mountain, mōns, -tis, *m.*
 — *ash*, ornus, -ī, *f.*
mourn, lūgeō, -xī, 2.
 — *over*, maereō, 2.
mouse, mūs, -ris, *m.*

mouth, ōs, ōris, *n.*
 move, mōveō, mōvī, mōtum, 2
 (*trans.*).
 much, multus; permultus.
 too-much (*adj.*), nimius.
 — (*adv.*), nimium; nimis.
 much-less } (*adv.*) nēdum. See
 — more } Ex. 43.
 mud, lūtum; limus, -ī, *m.*
 multitude, multitūdō, -inis, *f.*
 murder (*s.*), caedēs, -is, *f.*; to
 accuse of murder, inter sicāriōs
 (*assassins*) accūsāre.
 — (*v.*), īgulō, ī; occidō, -dī,
 -sum, 3.
 murderer, homicīda, *m.*; sī-
 cārius.
 murderess, homicīda, *f.*
 mushroom, bōlētus, -ī, *m.*
 music, mūsica.
 Mycenae, Mycēnae, *pl.*

N.

nail (*iron*), clāvus, -ī, *m.*
 — (*of man or beast*), unguis,
 -is, *m.*
 name, nōmen, -inis, *n.*
 nation, gēns, *f.*; nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
 native-land, patria.
 nature, nātūra; (*disposition*) in-
 dolēs, -is, *f.*
 naval, nāvālis.
 naught, nīhil; nīhilum.
 nay, immō.
 near, prōpe; apud; ad; iuxta.
 necessary, necessārius.
 is-necessary, necesse (*indecl.*) est;
 ōpus est.
 need (*s.*), see Ex. 27.
 — (*v.*), egeō, 2; see need (*s.*).

needle, ācus, -ūs, *f.*
 neither (*pron.*), neuter.
 — (*conj.*), nec, neque.
 Neptune, Neptūnus.
 never, numquam.
 nevertheless, tamen.
 new, nōvus.
 news, nūntius; gen. *of* novus
after quid, nihil, &c.
 next, proximus.
 next-day, postridiē; posterō diē.
 night, nox, noctis, *f.*
 by night, noctū; nocte.
 nightingale, luscīnia.
 nine-times, novīens.
 nineteen, undēvigintī.
 ninth, nōnus.
 no (*adj.*), nullus.
 nobody } nēmo, -inis (*for* gen. and
 none } abl. *use* nullus).
 no-one }
 not, nōn.
 not-even, nē . . . quidem.
 not-only, nōn modo.
 not-yet, nōndum.
 nothing, nīhil; nīhilum.
 nourish, alō, -uī, -itum and -tum, 3.
 now, iam; nunc.
 nowhere, nūquam.
 number (*s.*), numerus, -ī, *m.*;
 multitūdō, -inis, *f.*
 — (*v.*), ēnumerō, 1.

O.

oak, quercus, -ūs, *f.*
 oar, rēmus, -ī, *m.*
 oath, iūsūrāndum, iūrisiūrāndī, *n.*
 oats, avēna.
 obey, pāreō, 2 (*dat.*); obēdiō, 4
 (*dat.*).

observe, animadvertō, -ī, 3;
 sentiō, sēnsī, -sum, 4.
obtain, adipiscor, adeptus, 3;
 nanciscor, nactus, *or* nactus, 3.
offence, delictum; peccatum.
offer, porrigō, -rēxī, 3; offerō,
 obtuli, oblātum, offerre.
office, honōs, -ōris, *m.*; magis-
 trātus, -ūs, *m.*; (*i.e.*, *service*)
 officium.
often, saepe.
as-often-as, quōtiēns.
old, antiquus; vētus, *irreg.*; *ten*
years old, decem annōs nātus.
 — **-age**, senectūs, -ūtis, *f.*
 — **-man**, sēnex, senis.
 — **-woman**, ānus, -ūs.
grow-old, cōsenescō, -uī, 3.
olive, olea; olīva.
once (*not twice*), sēmel.
 — (*formerly*), quondam; olim.
at-once, stātīm; cōnfestim; prō-
 tinus.
one, ūnus; *one . . . one thing*,
another another, alius aliud,
 &c., alter alterum, &c.
one-of-two, alter.
one-or-the-other, alteruter.
one another, alter alterum, &c.;
 inter sē.
oneself, sē, suī, sibi.
one's-own, suus.
only, tantum; *see not only*.
open, aperiō, -uī, apertum, 4.
opinion, sententia.
opportunity, occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*
oppose, resistō, -stitī, 3; mē
 oppōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3.
orator, ōrātor.
order, imperō, 1 (*dat. and ut*);
 iubeō, iussī, iussum, 2 (*acc.*,
 inf.).

by-order, iussū.
origin, origō, -inis, *f.*
ostrich, strūthiocamēlus, -ī, *m.*
other, alius; (*of two*) alter.
otherwise, aliter.
ought, dēbeō, 2; oportet, 2.
our, noster.
out-of, ex.
 — **-doors**, (*after v. of rest*)
 foris; (*after v. of motion*) forās.
outside (*prep.*), extrā.
over, (*motion*), super with acc.;
 (*rest*) suprā; (*motion across*)
 trāns; (*of bridge over river*)
 in with abl.
be-over, praesum.
set-over, praeficiō, -fēcī, -fectum,
 3; praepōnō, -pōsuī, -positum, 3.
overthrow } ēvertō, -ī, -sum, 3.
overturn }
overwhelm, opprimō, -pressī,
 -pressum, 3.
owl, strix, -gis, *f.*
my-own (&c.), meus, tuus, &c.;
if emphasis is required add gen.
of ipse.
owner, dominus; possessor.
ox, bōs, bovis, *m.*

P.

pain (*s.*), dolor, -ōris, *m.*
feel-pain } doleō, 2; dolet
am-pained } mihi, impers.
paint, pingō, -nxī, -ctum, 3.
palace, rēgia (domus).
panic, pavor, -ōris, *m.*
paper, charta.
pardon (*s.*), venia.
 — (*v.*), ignōscō, -vī, -tum, 3
 (*dat.*).

parent, parēns.
 Paris, Paris, -idis.
 parsley, apium.
 pass (*law*), (lēgem) ūbeō, ūssi, -ssum, 2.
 passage, trānsitus, -ūs, *m*.
 patch, sarcio, -sī, -tum, 4.
 path, sēmita; trāmes, -itis, *m*.; callis, *m*.
 patrimony, patrimonium.
 Patroclus, Patroclus, -ī.
 pattern, exemplum.
 Paul, Paulus, -ī.
 pay, solvō, -vī, solūtum, 3; (*attention*) operam dāre.
 peace, pāx, -cis, *f*.
 hold-peace, taceō, 2.
 peasant, rusticus.
 pebble, calculus, -ī, *m*.
 peculiar, proprius.
 pedestal, bāsis, *f*.
 penny, dēnārius, -ī, *m*.
 people, populus, -ī, *m*.; or *turn impersonally*: see Ex. 44.
 perceive, sentiō, -sī, -sum, 4.
 perchance, forte.
 perform, fungor, fūctus, 3; efficiō, -fēcī, -fectum, 3.
 perhaps, fortasse; forsitan, usually with subj.
 perish, pereō, -ī, -ire; intereō; occidō, -dī, -cāsum, 3.
 it-is-permitted, licet, 2.
 persevere, persevērō, 1.
 Persian, Persēs, -ae, *m*.; pl. Persae.
 persuade, persuādeō, -sī, -sum, 2; [*am persuaded*, persuāsum est mihi; *not persuaded*, not persuādētur.]
 Pheidippides, Pheidippidēs, -is.
 Philippi, Philippī, pl.
 philosopher, philosophus, -ī.

picture, tabula.
 pig, porcus, -ī, *m*.; sūs, sūs, *c*.
 pincers, forceps, -ipis, *c*. (*use sing.*).
 Pindar, Pindārus, -ī.
 pine, pīnus, -ūs and -ī, *f*.; abiēs, -ētis, *f*. (*fir*).
 pious, pius.
 Piræus, Piræus, -ī, *m*.
 pirate, praedō, -ōnis; pīrāta, *m*.
 pit, puteus, -ī, *m*.; fovea.
 pitch, pix, picis, *f*.
 pitcher, urceus, -ī, *m*.
 piteous, miserābilis; flēbilis.
 pity (*s.*), misericordia; miserātiō.
 — (*v.*), miseret; misereor, 2 (*gen.*).
 place (*s.*), locus, -ī, *m*.
 — (*v.*), pōnō, pōsuī, -itum, 3.
 — in-the-way, obiciō, -iēcī, ictum, 3.
 — on, impōnō, 3.
 is plain, liquet; constat.
 plan, cōsiliū, -li.
 plank, tabula.
 plant, serō, sēvī, sātum, 3; cōnserō.
 Plato, Plātō, -ōnis.
 play, lūdō, -sī, -sum, 3.
 pleasant, ūcundus.
 please, placeō, 2; libet, *impers.*
 pleasure, voluptās.
 pledge, pignus, -oris, *n*.
 plenty, multum, with *gen.*
 lay-plots, conŭrō, 1; mōlior, 4.
 plough (*s.*), arātrum.
 — (*v.*), arō, 1.
 ploughman, arātor, -ōris.
 plum, prūnum.
 plunder (*s.*), praeda.
 — (*v.*), praedor, 1; spoliō, 1.

plunge (*sword*, &c.), *dēfigō*, -xi, -xum, 3.
 — (*intrans.*), *mergō*, -sī, -sum, 3, *with reflex. pron.*
poem, *poēma*, -tis, *n.*
poet, *poēta*, *m.*
point-to, *mōnstrō*, 1.
to the point, *ad rem*.
poison, *venēnum*.
poisoned, *venēnātus*.
Pompey, *Pompēius*, -ēi.
poor, *pauper*, -eris; *miser*.
port, *portus*, -ūs, *m.*
posterity, *posterī*, *pl.*
gain-possession-of, *potior*, 4.
possible, *with superlative*, see *Ex* 42.
it-is-possible, *est ut*.
pottage, *puls*, -tis, *f.*
power, *potestas*.
in-power-of, *pēnēs*.
have-power, *possum*, *potui*, *posse*; *valeo*, 2.
powerful, *potēns*.
be-powerful, *possum*; *valeō*, 2.
powerless-over, *impotēns*.
powerlessness, *imbēcillitās*; *in-firmitās*.
praetor, *praetor*, -ōris.
praise (*s.*), *laus*, -dis, *f.*
 — (*v.*), *laudō*, 1.
pray }
 — for } *precor*, 1.
prayer, *prēcās*, -um, *pl. f.*
precious, *pretiōsus*; *dilēctissimus*.
prefer, *mālō*, *irreg.*
in-presence-of, *cōram*.
be-present, *adsum*.
press (*s.*), *prēlum*.
 — (*v.*), *prēmō*, *pressī*, -ssum, 3.
 — *on*, *instō*, 1.

press towards, *nitor*, -sus *and* -xus, 3, *with ad.*
pretend, *simulō*, 1.
prevent, *impediō*, 4; *obstō*, -stitī, 1 (*dat.*).
price, *pretium*.
pride, *superbia*.
prince, *princeps*, -ipis.
prison, *carcer*, -eris, *m.*; *throw into prison*, *in vincula coniciō*, -iēcī, *iectum*, 3.
prisoner, (*in war*) *captivus*, -ī; (*legal*) *rēus*, -ī.
prize, *praemium*; *palma*.
procession, *pompa*.
prodigy, *prōdigium*; *portentum*.
produce, *gignō*, *genuī*, -itum, 3.
profit (*s.*), *ēmolumentum*; *lūcrum*.
 — (*v.*) *prōsum* (*dat.*).
promise (*s.*), *prōmissum*.
 — (*v.*), *prōmittō*, -sī, -ssum, 3; *polliceor*, 2.
pronounce, *prōnūntiō*, 1.
prop, *fulciō*, -sī, -tum, 4.
prophecy, *praedicō*, 3.
propose (*law*), *ferō*, *ferre*.
proposer, *auctor*.
prosper (*intrans.*), *prōspērā fortūnā ūtor*; *flōreō*, 2.
prosperity, *rēs secundae*; *prōsperae rēs*.
prosperous, (*men*) *flōrēns*, *and see prosper*; (*things*) *secundae*; *prōsper*, -era, -erum.
prostrate, *sternō*, *strāvī*, -tum, 3; *prōsternō*.
protect, *prōtegō*, -xi, -ctum, 3; *tueor*, -itus, 2.
protection, *praesidium*; *tūtēla*.
prove, *probō*, 1.
provide, *parō*, 1; *comparō*.

province, prōvincia.
 provisions, commeātus, -ūs, *m.*
 (*use sing. or pl.*); victus, -ūs,
 m.
 prudent, cōsiderātus; cautus.
 publish, ēdō, ēdidī, -tum, 3.
 Publius, Pūblius.
 punish, pūniō, 4; animadvertō, 3
 (*with in and acc.*).
 punishment, supplicium; poena.
 purpose, prōpositum; cōsiliū,
 -ī; *see also infirm.*
 pursue, īnsequor, -cūtus, 3; īnstō,
 -stiti, 1.
 put-on-trial, reum faciō, 3.
 — under, subdō, -didī, -ditum,
 3; suppōnō, -posui, -positum,
 3.
 pyre, roguis, -ī, *m.*

Q.

queen, rēgina.
 question, interrogō.
 quick-at, aptus ad.
 quickly, cito; celeriter.
 quite, plānē.

R.

race (*people*), gēns, -tis, *f.*
 — (*running*), cursus, -ūs, *m.*
 in-a-rage, irātus.
 rage (*v.*), saeviō, 4.
 rain (*s.*), pluvia.
 — (*v.*), pluui, 3, *impers.*
 raise, tollō, sustulī, sublātum,
 3.
 ram, ariēs, -ētis.
 rapidly, celeriter; cito

rarely, rārō [rārē means *thinly*,
sparsely.]
 rash, temerārius; praeceps, -ci-
 pitis.
 rashness, temeritās.
 rather, pōtius.
 rattle, crepō, -ui, -itum, 1.
 reach, perveniō, -vēnī, -ventum,
 4 (*ad*).
 read, lēgō, lēgī, -ctum, 3; per-
 legō.
 ready, parātus; (*money*) prae-
 sēns.
 in-reality }
 really } rē vērā.
 reap, metō, messui, -ssum, 3.
 rear, ēdūcō, 1.
 receive, accipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum,
 3; (*a person*) excipiō.
 recently, rēcēns; nūper.
 reckon, aestimō, 1; existimō, 1;
 dūcō, 3.
 recognise, agnōscō, -vī, -itum, 3.
 recount, *see relate*.
 recover, convalēscō, -lui, 2.
 red-faced, rubicundus.
 refresh, recreō, 1.
 refuse, recūsō, 1; negō, 1.
 reign, rēgnō, 1.
 reinforcements, subsidium.
 rejoice, laetor, 1; gaudeō, gā-
 visus sum, 2.
 relate, referō, rettulī, -lātum,
 -ferre; nārō, 1.
 relation, propinquus, -ī.
 release, solvō, -ī, solūtum, 3; (*a*
 prisoner) liberō, 1.
 rely-on, nitor, -xus *and* -sus, 3.
 relying-on (*adj.*), frētus.
 remain, maneō, -sī, -sum, 2;
 permaneō.
 it-remains, rēstat (*ut*).

remains (*s.*), reliquiae, pl.
 remedy, remedium.
 remember, meminī (perf. *in pres. sense*) (gen.); recordor, I (acc.).
 remind, moneō, 2.
 repair, reficiō, 3; sarcio, -sī, -tum, 4.
 repent, paenitet, 2, *impers.*
 reply, respondeō, -dī, -sum, 2.
 report, referō, rettulī, -lātum, -ferre; renūntiō, 1.
 repose, *see* rest.
 reproach, probum.
 republic, rēs publica.
 at-request-of, rogātū.
 come-to-rescue, subveniō, -vēnī, -ventum, 4.
 resign, abdīcō, 1 (mē magistrātū).
 resist, resistō, -stitī, 3.
 resolute, cōstāns; prōptus.
 resoluteness, cōstantia.
 resound, resonō, -uī, 1.
 rest (*s.*), quiēs, -tis, *f.*; requiēs, -ētis, -em, -ētem, abl. requiēs *only*.
 — (*v.*), requiēscō, -ēvī, -ētum, 3.
 rest-of, reliquus.
 the-rest (*pl.*) cēteri.
 restrain, coerceō, 2; inhibeō, 2.
 retain, teneō, 2; obtineō; retineō.
 retreat (*s.*), receptus, -ūs, *m.*
 — (*v.*), mē recipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3.
 return (*s.*), reditus, -ūs, *m.*
 — (*v. intrans.*), redeō, -iī, -itum, -ire.
 — (*v. trans.*), reddō, -didī, -ditum, 3; (*thanks*) agō, ēgī, āctum, 3.

M

returning, redux, -ūcis (*a./s.*)
 reverence, veneror, 1.
 revolve, circumvolvor, -volūtus, 3.
 reward, praemium; mercēs, -dis, *f.*
 Rhine, Rhēnus.
 Rhodes, Rhōdōs, -ī, *f.*
 rich, dives, -itis (*of things*) lautus.
 riches, divitiae, pl.
 ride, vehor (vectus, 3) equō.
 ride-round, equō circumvehor, 3.
 rider, eques, -itis.
 right, rēctus; aequus (*hand*) dextera.
 it-is-right, oportet, 2.
 rightly, rēctē.
 ring, ānulus, -ī, *m.*
 ringleader, caput, -itis, *n.*, *but treated as masc.*
 rise, surgō, surrexi, 3; (*of sun*) orior, ortus, 4.
 risk, periculum.
 river, fluvius, -ī, *m.*; flūmen, -inis, *n.*
 road, via.
 roam-over, pererrō, 1; peragrō, 1; pervagor, 1.
 roar (*s.*), murmur, -uris, *n.*
 — (*v.*), fremō, -uī, -itum, 3.
 roast, torreo, -uī, -stum, 2.
 rob, rapiō, -uī, -tum, 3; spōliō, 1.
 robber, praedō, -ōnis; latrō, -ōnis.
 robe, vestis, *f.*
 rock, rūpēs, -is, *f.*; scopulus, -ī, *m.*
 rod, virga.
 rogue, veterātor; scelestus.
 roll, volvō, -vī, volūtum, 3 (*trans.*).

roll-by (*intrans.*), praeterlābor,
-psus, 3.
roll-down, dēvolvō (*trans.*).
Rome, Rōma.
Roman, Rōmānus.
roof, tēctum.
root, rādix, -icis, *f.*
rose, rōsa.
round (*adj.*), rotundus.
— (*prep.*), circum.
rouse, cieō, cīvī, cītum, 2; sus-
citō, 1; (*feelings*) mōveō, mōvī,
mōtum, 2.
rout, fugō, 1.
rub, terō, trīvī, trītum, 3.
Rubicon, Rubicō, -ōnis.
ruddy, rubicunda.
ruin, ruīna.
rule, regō, rēxī, rēctum, 3.
run, currō, cucurrī, cursum, 3.
— away, fūgiō, fūgī, 3.
— over, trāscurrō, 3.
— up, accurrō.
runner, cursor.
rush, ruō, -ī, 3,
— forth, prōrumpō, -rūpī, 3;
mē prōripiō, -uī, 3.
— in, irruō, 3; inferor, illātus,
inferī.

S.

Sabine, Sabīnus.
sacrifice, sacrificō, 1; immolō, 1;
offer-favourable-sacrifice, litō, 1.
sad, trīstis.
safely, tūtō.
sail (*s.*), vēlum.
— (*v.*), nāvīgō, 1,
— over, nāvi trānsvehor, -vectus,

3.

sail round, nāvi circumvehor.
sailor, nauta.
sake, grātia.
on-sale, vēnālis (*adj.*).
salt, sal, -is, *m.*
same, idem.
at-same-time, simul.
sand, harēna.
Sarpēdon, Sarpēdōn, -ōnis.
say, dicō, 3; aiō, *defect.*; said
he, inquit (used parenthetic-
ally).
scarcely, vix.
scatter, spargō, -sī, -sum, 3.
schoolfellow, condiscipulus, -ī.
Scipio, Scīpiō, -ōnis.
scout, explōrator.
scrape, rādō, -sī, -sum, 3.
scream }
screech } ululō, 1.
— owl, strix, strigis, *f.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
search, scrūtōr, 1.
take-seat, cōnsidō, -sēdī, -sessum,
3.
second, alter.
secretary, scriba.
sedition, sēditō.
see, vidēō, vidī, vīsum, 2.
seed, sēmen, -inis, *n.*
seek, petō, -ivī, -itum, 3.
seem, videor, visus, 2.
seize, rapiō, -uī, -tum, 3; cor-
ripiō; (*a place*) occupō, 1.
sell, vendō, -didi, -tum, 3.
be-sold, vēneō, (like eō) *intrans.*
senate-house, cūria.
senator, senātor.
send, mittō, -sī, -ssum, 3.
— for, arcesso, -ivī, -itum, 3.
sentence, sententia.
sentinel, vigil, -is.

September, September, -bris.
 serpent, anguis, *m.*; serpēns.
 servant, minister, -trī.
 serve, serviō, 4 (dat.).
 service, officium; operae, pl.;
 ūtilitātēs, pl. (*all with* praebeō,
 praestō).
 servitude, servitūdō, -inis, *f.*
 sesterce, sestertius, -ī, *m.*
 set (*sun*), occidō, -dī, -cāsum,
 3.
 — up, pōnō, posuī, -itum, 3.
 — out, prōficiscor, -fectus, 3.
 — over, praepōnō; praeficiō.
 several, nōnnūllī; aliquot.
 severe, ācer; acerbus.
 sew, suō, suī, sūtum, 3.
 shade } umbra. •
 shadow }
 shady, umbrōsus.
 shake, quatiō, -ssī, 3; concutiō.
 — down, dēcutiō.
 shameful, probrosus.
 shameless, impudēns.
 shape, speciēs, -ēī, *f.*; forma.
 sharp, acūtus.
 sharpen, acuō, 3.
 shave, rādō, -sī, -sum, 3; tondeō,
 totondī, -sum, 2 (= *clīp*).
 shear, tondeō: *see* shave.
 sheep, ōvis, *f.*
 sheepfold, ovile, *n.*
 sheet, linteum.
 shepherd, pastor.
 shew, mōnstrō, 1; *if* 'is shewn'
 = 'is seen,' use cernō, 3.
 shew-pity, miseror, 1.
 shield, scūtum; clipeus, -ī, *m.*
 shine, fulgeō, -sī, 2.
 ship, nāvis, *f.*
 shoe, calceus, -ī, *m.*
 shore, litus, -oris, *n.*

shoot, ēmittō, -sī, 3; coniciō,
 -īcī, 3.
 short, brevis.
 shoulder, umerus, -ī, *m.*
 shout (*s.*), clāmōr, -ōris, *m.*
 — (*v.*). clāmō, 1; exclāmō.
 shouting (*s.*), *see* shout (*s.*).
 shower, imber, -bris, *m.*
 shriek, ululō, 1.
 shudder, horreō, 2.
 Sicily, Sicilia.
 Sicilian, Siciliēnsis.
 sick, aegrōtus; (*at heart*) aeger
 animī.
 be-sick-of, taedet, 2.
 sickle, falx, -cis, *f.*
 be-on-side-of, stō ab, steti,
 stātum, 1.
 on-all-sides, undique; ab omni
 parte.
 on-this-side-of, citrā; cis.
 siege, obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.*; obsessiō,
 -ōnis, *f.*
 signal, signum.
 silence, silentium.
 there-is-silence, silētur, 2 *im-*
 pers.
 silent, tacitus; (*habitually*) taci-
 turnus.
 be-silent, taceō, 2; sileō, 2.
 silk, bombŷx, -ŷcis, *f.*
 silly, ineptus.
 silver, argentum.
 similar, similis.
 sin, peccō, 1.
 since (*prep.*), post.
 — (*conj.*), postquam; cum *with*
 indic.
 sing } canō, cecinī, cantum,
 — of } 3; cantō, 1.
 sink (*trans.*), mergō, -sī, -sum,
 3; dēmergō.

sink (*intrans.*), mergor; fluctibus

haurior, haustus, 4.

sister, soror, -ōris.

sit } sēdeō, sēdī, sessum,

— -down } 2; cōsīdō, -sēdī, 3

situated, situs.

six, sex.

sixty, sexāgintā.

slip-off, dēlābor, -psus, 3.

small, parvus.

smear, linō, lēvī, litum, 3.

smooth, lēvis.

snake, anguis, *m.*

snatch, rapiō, -uī, -tum, 3;

ēripiō, ēreptum, 3.

snow, nix, nivis, *f.*

it-snows, ningit, *impers.*

so, ita; sic; tam.

— -great } tantus.

— -large }

— -long-as, quamdiū.

— -much, tantus.

so-great-as } tantus quantus;

so-large-as } tantus sometimes

so-much-as } omitted.

so-long-as, see Exx. 58 and 70.

so-many, tot [not tanti].

so-many-as, tot quot; tot *sometimes omitted.*

Socrates, Sōcratēs.

be-sold, vēneō (*like eō*), *intrans.*

soldier, miles, -itis.

solidity, soliditās.

some, see Ex. 38; *some . . . some*,
aliī . . . aliī.

some-day, aliquandō; olim.

sometimes, aliquandō; nōnum-
quam; interdum.

son, filius.

song, carmen, -inis, *n.*

soon, mōx.

sooner, prius; mātūrius.

be-sorry, paenitet.

sort, genus, -eris, *n.*; *of the sort*,
tālis.

sound, sonō, -uī, -itum, 1; (*sig-
nal*) canō, cecinī, cantum, 3.

source, fōns, -tis, *m.*; oriō, -inis,
f.

sow, sūs, sūis.

space, spatium.

spade, pāla; ligō -ōnis, *m.*

Spanish, Hīspānus.

spare, parcō, pepercī, parsum, 3.

sparing, parcus.

sparrow, passer, -eris, *m.*

Sparta, Sparta.

speak, loquor, -cūtus, 3.

spear, hasta; *hunting-spear*, vēn-
ābulum.

spectacle, spectāculum.

speech, ōratiō; cōntiō.

speed, celeritās; *at full speed*,
cursū; māgnō cursū.

spend (*time*) terō, trīvī, -tum, 3;
agō, ēgī, āctum, 3.

spin, neō, nēvī, 2.

spirit, animus, -ī, *m.*

spirited, animōsus.

splendid, splendidus; māgnificus,
-entior.

split, findō, fidī, -ssum, 3.

spoil, corrumpo, -rūpī, 3.

spread-out, pandō, -dī, -ssum, 3.

spring, vēr, -is, *n.*

squander, dissipō, 1.

square, quadrātus.

stab, fodiō, fōdī, fōssum, 3; cōn-
fodiō.

staff, baculum.

stain, foedō, 1; tinguō, -nxī,
-nctum, 3.

stamp (*s.*), nōta.

— (*v.*), feriō, percussī, -ssum, 4.

stand, stō, steff, stātum, 1.
 — for (*as candidate*), petō,
 -īvi, -itum, 3.
 — in way, obstō, -stiti, 1.
 — round, circumstō.
 standard-bearer, vexillārius.
 star, astrum.
 state, rēs publica.
 statue, signum.
 stay, commoror, 1.
 steal, fūr, 1.
 steep, arduus.
 step, grādus, -ūs, *m*.
 stick (*s.*), baculum.
 — (*v.*), haereō, -si, -sum, 2.
 still, adhuc.
 stone, saxum.
 storm (*s.*), procella.
 —, (*v.*), expugnō, 1.
 stormy, turbulentus; procellō-
 sus.
 story, fābula.
 strange, mirus; insolitus.
 stream, amnis, *m*.
 street, platea; vicus.
 strength, virēs, -ium, pl.
 strew, cōsternō, -strāvi, -strātum,
 3.
 strife, lis, litis, *f*.
 strike, percutiō, -ssi, -ssum, 3.
 strip, nudō, 1; dēnudō.
 strive, nitōr, -xus and -sus, 3 (*ut*);
 cōnor, 1.
 stroke, mulgeō, -si, -sum, 2.
 strong, validus; valens.
 so strongly, tantā vi.
 study, studeō, 2 (*dat.*).
 stumble, titubō, 1.
 stump, stipes, -itis, *f*.
 subdue, domō, -ui, -itum, 1; de-
 vincō, -vici, -ctum, 3.
 subtle, subtilis.

succeed, prōficiō, feci, -fectum,
 3.
 succour (*s.*), opem, *f.*, defect;
 auxilium.
 — (*v.*), subveniō, -vēni, -ven-
 tum, 4 (*dat.*).
 such, tālis.
 such as, tālis quālis (*tālis often
 omitted*).
 sudden, subitus; repentinus; im-
 prōvisus.
 suddenly, subitō; repentē.
 suffer, patior, passus, 3; tolerō,
 1.
 sufficiently, sēis.
 suitable, aptus; idōneus.
 suitor, proci.
 sullen, tristis.
 sums-of-money, pecūniāe, pl.
 summer, aestās, *f*.
 summit, cacūmen, -inis, *n*.; ver-
 tex, -icis, *m*.
 summon, arcessō, -īvi, -itum, 3.
 sun, sōl, -is, *m*.
 sunny, apricus.
 sup, cēnō, 1.
 suppliant, supplex, -icis.
 support, fāveō, fāvi, fāutum, 2.
 suppose, putō, 1.
 be sure, prō certō habeō, 2; per-
 suāsum habeō.
 surety, vās, vādis, *m*.
 surpass, exsuperō, 1; praestō,
 -stiti, 1 (*dat.*).
 surprise, opprimō, -pressi, -sum,
 3.
 be surprised, miror, 1.
 surround, cingō, -xi, -ctum, 3;
 circumdō, -dedi, -datum, 3.
 survive, supersum (*dat.*).
 surviving, superstes, -stis.
 in-suspense, suspensus.

swallow, sorbeō, -psī, -ptum, 2.
 — up, hauriō, -sī -stum, 4.
 swan, cŷgnus, -ī, *m.*
 swear, iūrō, 1 (*with per*).
 sweet, dulcis.
 swift, celer; vēlōx.
 swim, natō, 1.
 — across, trānō, 1.
 swine, suēs, -um, pl.
 sword, glādius, -ī, *m.*; ēnsis, *m.*
 Syracuse, Syracūsae, pl.

T.

table, mēnsa.
 tail, cauda.
 tailor, sartor, -ōris.
 take, capiō, cēpī, captum, 3.
 — away, auferō, abstuli, ablātum, auferre.
 — leap, salīō, salui, -saltum, 4; (*a cogn. acc. may be added*).
 — precaution, cāveō, cāvī, cautum, cavēre.
 — seat, cōsīdō, -sēdī, -sessum, 3.
 tale, fābula.
 talent (*intellectual*), ingenium;
 (*money*) talentum.
 talk, loquor, -cū, 3; colloquer.
 talkative, loquax, -ācis.
 tall, excelsus, -us, 3.
 tame, domō, -mī, -tum, 1.
 taste, gūsto, mītescō, 3.
 taurus, Taurus, -ī, *f.*
 tax, censum; opus, -eris, *m.*
 taxer, censor, -ōris, *m.*
 taxer's office, censi, -ī, *f.*
 teach, doceō, -ui, -tum, 2.

teaching, doctrīna.
 tear, (*s.*), lacrima.
 — (*v.*), scindō, scīdī, scīssum, 3.
 tell, dicō, -xī, -ctum, 3; (*i.e., order*) see order.
 — a-lie, mentior, 4.
 — (*a story*), nārō, 1.
 temple, templum.
 ten, dēcem.
 tenacious, tenāx, -ācis.
 tent, tabernāculum.
 tenth, decimus.
 terrible, terribilis; horribilis.
 terrified, perterritus; exterritus.
 territory, ager, -grī, *m.*; terra; finēs, *m.* pl.
 terrors, terrōrēs, *m.* pl.
 Thames, Tāmesis, *m.*
 than, quam; *or, see* abl.
 that (*pron.*), ille; is; iste; see Ex. 35.
 — (*conj.*), ut.
 theatre, theātrum.
 Thebes, Thēbae, pl.
 theft, fūrtum.
 then (*at that time*), tum; tunc.
 — (*next*) dēinde; exinde; inde; deinceps.
 — (*accordingly*), see therefore.
 thence, inde.
 there, ibi; illic.
 therefore, igitur; ideō; itaque.
 Thessaly, Thessālia.
 thick, dēnsus.
 thief, fūr, -is.
 thigh, femur, -oris, *n.*
 thin, macer, -cra, -crum.
 thing, rēs, rei, *f.*
 think, putō, 1; arbitror, 1; opinor, 1.
 thirst, sitis, -is, *f.*

thirty, trigintā.
 this, hīc, haec, hōc.
 — -side-of, citrā; cis.
 thither, illūc.
 though, *see* Ex. 71.
 thousand, mille, *indecl.*; pl.
 milia, -um.
 thread, filum.
 threat, minae, pl.
 threaten, minor, 1 (dat. of pers.,
 acc. of thing threatened; or
 acc. and inf.).
 three, trēs, tria.
 — -days, trīdium.
 — -years, trīennium.
 through, per.
 throw, iaciō, iēcī, iactum, 3;
 (*into prison, in vincula coniciō*).
 thrust, trūdō, -si, -sum, 3.
 — -out, extrūdō.
 thump, tundō, tutudī, tūsum, 3.
 thunder, tonitrus, -ūs, *m.*; tonitru-
 um, -i, *n.*; (*bold*) fulmen, -inis, *n.*
 thus, sic; ita.
 thus-far, hātenus.
 Tiber, Tiberis.
 tiger, tigris, -is or -idis, *m.* in
prose [*in verse usually f.*].
 till, dum; dōnec; quōad.
 time, tempus, -oris, *n.*; (*many*
times [larger, &c.]), multis
 partibus [māior, &c.]).
 in-time, tempore; in tempore;
 ad tempus.
 timid, imbellis; timidus.
 tired-out, dēfessus.
 to, ad.
 to-day, hodiē.
 toga, tōga.
 together, simul.
 toil, labor, -ōris, *m.*; sūdor, *m.*
 (*sweat*).

tolerant, patiēns.
 tolerate, tolerō, 1; patior, pas-
 sus, 3.
 tomb, sepulcrum; tumulus, -i, *m.*
 to-morrow, crās.
 tongue, lingua.
 too, *see also*.
 — (good, &c.), *use compar. of*
adj. or adv.
 — -little (of), pārū.
 — -much, nimius, (*adj.*); nimis
 or nimium *with gen.*
 tooth, dēns, -tis, *m.*
 top (of), summus (*adj.*).
 — (*to spin*), turbō, -inis, *m.*
 torch, fāx, fācis, *f.*; taeda.
 torture, torqueō, -si, -tum, 2;
 cruciō, 1.
 total, tōtus.
 totally, omnīnō; tōtus (*adj.*).
 touch, tangō, tetigī, tactum, 3.
 towards, adversus; versus (*fol-*
lows its case).
 tower, turris, -is, *f.*
 town, oppidum.
 trader, mercātor.
 traitor, prōditor.
 transgress, contrā [lēgem] faciō,
 3; violō, 1.
 travel, iter faciō, 3; (*abroad*)
 peregrīnor, 1.
 traverse, obeō (*like eō*); pera-
 grō, 1.
 treacherous, perfidus.
 treacherously, perfidiōsē; per
 dolum.
 treachery, perfidia.
 treason, *use maiestās* [*lit. the*
majesty of the state: in the
phrase mā'estātis accūsare, lae-
sae or minūtiae (injured) is un-
derstood.]

treasure, thēsaurus, -ī, *m.*
 treasury, aerārium.
 tree, arbor, -oris, *f.*
 tremble, tremō, -ūi, 3.
 trench, fossa.
 put on trial, reum faciō, 3.
 tribune, tribūnus, -ī, *m.*
 trickery, dolus, -ī, *m.*
 trifle, nūgātor.
 triumph (*s.*), triumphus, -ī, *m.*
 — (*v.*), triumphō, 1 (*with*
dē).
 triumvir, triumvir, -ī.
 Trojan, Trōānus.
 Troy, Trōa.
 browns, brācae, *pl.*
 true, vērus.
 truly, rē vērā.
 trumpet, tuba.
 trust, crēdō, -didi, -itum, 3 (*dat.*);
 cōnfidō, -fisis sum, 3 (*dat.*).
 truth, vērītās, *f.*
 truthful, vērus.
 try, cōnor, 1 (*with inf.*), nitor,
 -sus or -sus, 3 (*with ut*).
 tune, pueri, *pl.*
 turf, caespēs, -itis, *m.*
 turn, vertō, -ī, -sum, 3; *is a re-*
proach, vitiō vertō.
 — away, avertō.
 Tuscan, Tuscus.
 twelve, duodecim.
 twenty, viginti.
 twice, bis.
 twin, geminus.
 twist, torquēō, -si, -tum, 2.
 two, duo, -a, -o.
 ugly, turpis.
 under, sub; subter.
 understand, intelligō, -xi, -ctum,
 3.
 undertake, suscipiō, -cēpi, -cep-
 tum, 3.
 undertaking, rēs, rei, *f.*
 unexpectedly, *see* unawares.
 unfortunately, infēliciter; *turn*
out unfortunately, secus cēdō,
 3.
 ungrateful, ingrātus.
 unhappy, infēlix.
 unhealthy, gravis; pestilēns.
 unjustly, iniuriā, (*abl.*).
 unkind, inhūmānus; illiberalis.
 unknown, ignōtus.
 unless, nisi.
 unlike, dissimilis.
 unmarried, innūpta.
 unmindful, immemor, -ōris.
 unskilful, imperitus.
 until, dum; donec; quoad;
 Exx. 58 and 70.
 unusual, egregius; insolitus.
 unwilling, iavitus; nolens.
 be-unwilling, nōlō, *irreg.*
 unwilling, imprūdēns.
 unworthy, indignus.

U.

ugly, turpis.
 Ulixes, Ulixēs, -is.
 be-unable, nequeō (*like eō*).
 unaccustomed, insuētus (*with*
gen. or dat.).
 unacquainted-with, ignārus; ex-
 pers, -tis.
 unawares, imprūdēns; incautus
 (these are *adj.* agreeing with
 the person taken unawares).
 uncle, patruus (*on father's side*);
 avunculus (*mother's side*).
 under, sub; subter.
 understand, intelligō, -xi, -ctum,
 3.
 undertake, suscipiō, -cēpi, -cep-
 tum, 3.
 undertaking, rēs, rei, *f.*
 unexpectedly, *see* unawares.
 unfortunately, infēliciter; *turn*
out unfortunately, secus cēdō,
 3.
 ungrateful, ingrātus.
 unhappy, infēlix.
 unhealthy, gravis; pestilēns.
 unjustly, iniuriā, (*abl.*).
 unkind, inhūmānus; illiberalis.
 unknown, ignōtus.
 unless, nisi.
 unlike, dissimilis.
 unmarried, innūpta.
 unmindful, immemor, -ōris.
 unskilful, imperitus.
 until, dum; donec; quoad;
 Exx. 58 and 70.
 unusual, egregius; insolitus.
 unwilling, iavitus; nolens.
 be-unwilling, nōlō, *irreg.*
 unwilling, imprūdēns.
 unworthy, indignus.

upon, in ; super.
 upper-air, aethēr, -ēris, *m.*
 urgent, say *there is need of*
haste.
 of-use, ūsuī (dat.).
 use, ūtor, ūsus, 3.
 it-is-useful, expedit, 4.
 useless, inūtilis.

V.

valley, vallis, -is, *f.*
 valour, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
 valuable, pretiōsus.
 value (*s.*), pretium.
 — (*v.*) aestimō, 1.
 vase, vās, vāsīs, *n.*
 vegetable, holus, -eris, *n.*
 venerate, veneror, 1.
 Venus, Vēnus, -eris.
 verse, versus, -ūs, *m.*
 vessel, vās, vāsīs, *n.*
 veterans, veterānī.
 vice, vitium.
 victor } victor, -ōris.
 victorious }
 victory, victōria.
 villain, scelestus ; veterātor.
 violence, vīs, vim, vī.
 violent-death, nex, necis, *f.*
 violently, vī ; per vim ; vehementer.
 Virgil, Vergilius.
 virgin, virgō, -inis.
 virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
 visit, vīsō, -ī, 3.
 vocabulary, vocābulōrium index,
 -icis, *m.*
 vote, punctum.
 vow, vōveō, vōvī, -tum, 2.
 voyage, cursus, -ūs, *m.*

W.

wages, mercēs, -ēdis, *f.*
 wait } opperior, 4 ; exspectō,
 — -for } 1.
 wake (*trans.*), suscitō, 1 ; excitō.
 — (*intrans.*), expergiscor,
 -perrēctus, 3.
 walk } ambulō, 1 ; spatior,
 — -about } 1.
 — -over, *the above verbs with*
in (abl.) or per.
 wall, mūrus ; (*of town*) moenia,
 pl. ; (*of house*) paries, -ētis,
m.
 walnut, nux, -cis, *f.*
 wand, virga.
 wander } errō, 1 ; vagor, 1 ;
 — -about } *of people dis-*
persed, pālor, 1.
 wandering (*s.*), error, -ōris, *m.*
 want (*v.*), use opus ; see Ex.
 27.
 — (*desire*), vōlō, *irreg.* ; cupiō,
 -ivī, -itum, 3.
 be-in-want-of, careō, 2 ; egeō, 2.
 wanting (*lacking*), egēs.
 be-wanting, dēsum ; dēficiō,
 fēci, -fectum, 3.
 war, bellum.
 warm, tepidus ; calidus.
 warn, moneō, 2.
 warrior, bellātor ; miles.
 wash, lāvō, lāvī, lavātum, lautum,
 lōtum, 1.
 waste, dissipō, 1 ; effundō, -fūdī,
 sum, 3.
 watch, vigilia, *f.* ; excubiae, pl.
 watchman, vigil ; custōs, -ōdis.
 water, aqua.
 wave, unda.
 wax, cēra.

way, via; (i.e. *manner*) *mōdus*, -i, *m.*; (*method*) *ratio*, -onis, *f.*; *in-no-way*, *nēquāquam*.
weak, *dēbilis*; *infirmus*.
wealth, *divitiae*; *opēs*, pl. *f.*
wear, *gerō*, -ssi, -stum, 3; *gestō*, 1.
wearily, *languidē*.
weary, *fessus*; *dēfessus*.
be-weary-of, *taedet*.
weave, *texō*, -ui, -xtum, 3.
web, *tēla*.
wedding, *nūptiae*, pl.
weep, *fleō*, *flēvī*, *flētum*, 2.
weight, *pondus*, -eris, *n.*
welcome, *excipio*, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3.
well (*s.*), *puteus*, -i, *m.*
 — (*adv.*), *bēnē*.
wheat, *triticum*.
when (*rel.*), *cum*; *ūbī*; *ut*.
 — (*interrog.*), *quandō*.
whence (*rel. and interrog.*), *unde*.
where (*rel. and interrog.*), *ūbī*.
wherever, *ubicumque*.
whether (*in questions and after verbs of doubting*), *see* Exx. 56 and 86.
whether . . . or (*in conditional clauses*), *sive . . . sive*; *seu . . . seu*. *See* Exx. 71 and 86.
wheelstone, *cōs*, -tis, *f.*
which (*interrog.*), *quis*; *with subst.*, *quī*; (*of two*) *ūter*.
whichever, *quicumque*; *quisquis*; (*of two*) *uterumque*.
which-you-please, *quīvis*; *quilibet*; (*of two*) *utervis*; 1.
while, *dum*; *dōnec*.
white, *albus*; *candidus*
whiten, *candidō*, 1.
whither, *quō*.

whithersoever, *quōcumque*.
who (*interrog.*), *quis*.
whoever, *see* **whichever**.
whole, *tōtus*.
wholesome, *salūtāris*.
why, *cūr*; *quid*; *quārē*; *quamo-brem*.
wicked, *scelestus*; *mālus*.
wickedness, *scelus*, -eris, *n.*; *flāgitium*.
wide, *lātus*.
wife, *ūxor*, -ōris.
wild, *ferus*.
 — *beast*, *fera*, *f.*
will, *voluntās*, *f.*
be-willing, *vōlō*, *irreg.*
willing, *vōlēns*; *lībēns*.
willingly, *lībenter*.
willow, *salix*, -icis, *f.*
win, *assequor*, -cūtus, 3; *reportō*, 1.
win-over, *conciliō*, 1.
wine, *vinum*.
wing, *āla*.
winter (*s.*), *hiemps*, -emis, *f.*
 — (*adj.*), *hībernus*; *hiemālis*.
wipe-off, *dētergeō*, -si, -sum, 2.
wisdom, *sapientia*; *prudentia*.
wise, *sapiēns*; *prūdēns*.
be-wise, *sapiō*, -ivi *and* -iī, 3.
wisely, *sapienter*; *prūdentē*.
wish (*s.*), *voluntās*; *vōtum*.
 — (*v.*), *vōlō*, *irreg.*; *cupiō*, -ivi, -itum, 3.
wished-for, *dēsiderātus*.
wit, *lepōs*, -ōris, *m.*; (*intellect*) *ingenium*.
with, *cum*; *ūnā cum*.
within, *intrā*; (*of time*), *see* Ex. 25.
without, *sīnē*.
withstand, *resistō*, -stiti, 3; *obstō*, -stiti 1.

withy, vīmen, -inis, *n.*
 witness (*s.*), testis.
 call-to-witness, testor, *1.*
 wolf, lupus, -ī, *m.*
 woman, mulier, -eris.
 old-woman, anus, -ūs.
 wonder, mīror, *1*; admīror.
 wonderful, mīrus; mīrābilis.
 wonderfully, mīrē; mīrificē.
 wonderment, admirātiō.
 be-wont, soleō, solitus sum, *2.*
 wood, silva; saltus, -ūs, *m.*
 word, verbum; vōx, -cis, *f.*
 work (*s.*), ōpus, -eris, *n.*; lābor,
 -ōris, *m.*
 work (*v.*), labōrō, *1.*
 world, mundus, -ī, *m.*
 be-worth, valeō, *2.*
 worthless, vilis.

worthy, dignus.
 wound (*s.*), volnus, -eris, *n.*
 — (*v.*), volnerō, *1.*
 wretched, miser.
 write, scribō, -psī, -ptum, *3* (*with*
 ad).
 — down, dēscribō.
 be-wrong, errō, *1.*

Y.

year, annus, -ī, *m.*; see two-years,
 three-years.
 yes, etiam.
 yesterday, herī.
 yield, cēdō, -ssī, -ssum, *3.*
 young, parvus; iūnior.
 — man, iuvenis.

Illustrated, Fine-Art, and other Volumes.

- Adventure, The World of. *Cheap Edition.* Illustrated with Stirring Pictures and Eighteen Coloured Plates. In Three Vols. 5s. each.
- Africa and its Explorers, The Story of. By Dr. ROBERT BROWN, F.L.S. Illustrated. *Cheap Edition.* In 4 Vols., 4s. each.
- Animals, Popular History of. By HENRY SCHERREN, F.Z.S. With 13 Coloured Plates and other Illustrations. 7s. 6d.
- Architectural Drawing. By R. PHÉNÉ SPIERS. Illustrated. 10s. 6d.
- Art, Sacred. With nearly 200 Full-page Illustrations and descriptive text. In one Vol., 9s.
- Art, The Magazine of. With Exquisite Photogravures, a Series of Full-page Plates, and hundreds of Illustrations. Yearly Vol., 21s.
- Artistic Anatomy. By Prof M. DUVAL. *Cheap Edition.* 3s. 6d.
- Ballads and Songs. By WILLIAM MAKEPEACE THACKERAY. With Original Illustrations. 6s.
- Barber, Charles Burton, The Works of. With Forty-one Plates and Portraits, and Introduction by HARRY FURNISS. *Cheap Edition.* 7s. 6d.
- Beetles, Butterflies, Moths, and Other Insects. By A. W. KAPPEL, F.E.S., and W. EGMONT KIRBY. With 12 Coloured Plates. 3s. 6d.
- "Belle Sauvage" Library, The. Cloth, 2s. each. A list of the Volumes post free on application.
- Berry, Rev. C. A., Life of, By the Rev. J. S. DRUMMOND and Mrs. BERRY. With Portrait, 6s.
- Birds, Our Rarer British: Their Nests, Eggs and Breeding Haunts. By R. KEARTON, F.Z.S. With about 70 Illustrations from Photographs. 7s. 6d.
- Bitter Heritage, A. By J. BLOUNDELLE-BURTON. 6s.
- Britain's Roll of Glory; or, The Victoria Cross, its Heroes, and their Valour. By D. H. PARRY. Illus. *Cheap Edition.* 3s. 6d.
- British Ballads. With 300 Original Illustrations. *Cheap Edition.* Two Vols. in One. Cloth, 7s. 6d.
- British Battles on Land and Sea. By JAMES GRANT. With about 800 Illustrations. *Cheap Edition.* In Four Vols., 3s. 6d. each.
- Building World. Half-Yearly Volumes, 4s. each.
- Butterflies and Moths, European. With 61 Coloured Plates. 35s.
- Canaries and Cage-Birds, The Illustrated Book of. With 56 Facsimile Coloured Plates, 35s. Half-morocco, £2 5s.
- Cassell's Magazine. Half-Yearly Vol., 5s.; or Yearly Vol., 8s.
- Cathedrals, Abbeys, and Churches of England and Wales. Descriptive, Historical, Pictorial. *Popular Edition.* Two Vols. 12s. the set.
- Chums. The Illustrated Paper for Boys. Yearly Volume, 8s.
- Cities of the World. Four Vols. Illustrated. 7s. 6d. each.
- Civil Service, Guide to Employment in the. Entirely New Edition. Paper, 1s. Cloth, 1s. 6d.
- Clinical Manuals for Practitioners and Students of Medicine. A List of Volumes forwarded post free on application to the Publishers.
- Colour. By Prof. A. H. CHURCH. With Coloured Plates. 3s. 6d.
- Conning Tower, In a; or, How I Took H.M.S. "Maestic" into Action. By H. O. ARNOLD-FORSTER, M.P. *Cheap Edition.* 18d. 6d.

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

- Cookery, Cassell's Dictionary of. With about 9,000 Recipes. 5s.
 Cookery for Common Ailments. 1s.
 Cookery, A Year's. By PHYLLIS BROWNE. *Cheap Edition*, 1s.
 Cookery Book, Cassell's New Universal. By LIZZIE HERITAGE.
 With 12 Coloured Plates and other Illustrations. 6s.
 Cookery, Cassell's Shilling. Limp cloth, 1s.
 Cookery, Vegetarian. By A. G. PAYNE. *Cheap Edition*, 1s.
 Cooking by Gas, The Art of. By MARIE J. SUGG. Illustrated, 2s.
 Copyright in Books, The Law and History of. By AUGUSTINE
 BIRRELL, M.P. 3s. 6d. net.
 Countries of the World, The. By ROBERT BROWN, M.A., F.L.S., &c.
Cheap Edition. Illustrated. In Six Vols. 6s. each.
 Curve Templates, Reversible Scaled. By Prof. R. H. SMITH. 23
 Curves, 10s. od. the Set; or in Four Sections, 2s. 6d. each
 Cyclopædia, Cassell's Concise. With about 600 Illustrations. 5s.
 Cyclopædia, Cassell's Miniature. Containing 30,000 subjects. *Cheap
 and Revised Edition*. Limp cloth, 1s., cloth gilt, 1s. 6d.
 Dainty Breakfasts, The Dictionary of. By PHYLLIS BROWNE. 1s.
 Dog, Illustrated Book of the. By VERO SHAW, B.A. With 28 Coloured
 Plates. Cloth bevelled, 35s.; half-morocco, 45s.
 Doré Bible, The. With 200 Full-page Illustrations by DORÉ. 15s.
 Doré Don Quixote, The. With about 400 Illustrations by GUSTAVE
 DORÉ. *Cheap Edition*. Cloth, 10s. 6d.
 Doré Gallery, The. With 250 Illustrations by DORÉ. 4to, 42s.
 Doré's Dante's Inferno. Illustrated by GUSTAVE DORÉ. Large 4to
 Edition, cloth gilt, 21s. Cloth gilt or buckram, 7s. 6d.
 Doré's Dante's Purgatory and Paradise. Illustrated by GUSTAVE
 DORÉ. *Cheap Edition*. 7s. 6d.
 Doré's Milton's Paradise Lost. Illustrated by DORÉ. 4to, 21s. *Popular
 Edition*. Cloth or buckram, 7s. 6d. *Cheap Edition*. In One Vol. 12s. 6d.
 Earth, Our, and its Story. By Dr. ROBERT BROWN, F.L.S. With
 Coloured Plates and numerous Wood Engravings Three Vols. 9s. each.
Cheap Edition, 5s. each.
 Egypt: Descriptive, Historical, and Picturesque. By Prof. G. EBERS.
 With 800 Original Engravings. *Popular Edition*. In Two Vols. 42s.
 Electric Current, The. How Produced and How Used. By R.
 MULLINEUX WALMSLEY, D.Sc., &c. Illustrated. 10s. 6d.
 Electricity in the Service of Man. Illustrated. *Cheap Edition*. 7s. 6d.
 Electricity, Practical. By Prof. W. E. AVERTON, F.R.S. Entirely New
 and Enlarged Edition, completely re-written. 9s.
 Encyclopædic Dictionary, The. In Fourteen Divisional Vols., 10s. 6d.
 each; or Seven Vols., half-morocco, 21s. each; half-russia, 25s.
 England and Wales, Pictorial. With upwards of 320 beautiful Illus-
 trations prepared from copyright photographs. 9s.
 England, A History of. From the Landing of Julius Cæsar to the
 Present Day. By H. O. ARNOLD-FORSTER, M.P. Fully Illustrated. 5s.
 English Dictionary, Cassell's. Giving Definitions of more than 100,000
 Words and Phrases. *Cheap Edition*, 3s. 6d. *Superior Edition*, 5s.
 English History, The Dictionary of. Edited by SYDNEY LOW, B.A.,
 and Prof. F. S. PULLING, M.A. *New Edition*, 7s. 6d.
 English Literature, Library of. By Prof. HENRY MORLEY. Complete
 in Five Vols., 7s. 6d. each.

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

- English Literature, The Dictionary of. By W. DAVENPORT ADAMS. *Cheap Edition.* 7s. 6d.
- English Literature, Morley's First Sketch of. *Revised Edition.* 7s. 6d.
- English Literature, The Story of. By ANNA BUCKLAND. 3s. 6d.
- English Writers. By Prof. HENRY MORLEY. Vols. I. to XI. 5s. each.
- Family Doctor, Cassell's. By A MEDICAL MAN. Illustd. 10s. 6d.
- Family Lawyer, Cassell's. An Entirely New and Original Work. By A BARRISTER-AT-LAW. 10s. 6d.
- Fiction, Popular Library of. 3s. 6d. each.
- THE ROGUE'S MARCH. By E. W. Hornung.
- MRS. CLIFF'S Y'CHT. By Frank Stockton.
- WHAT CHIFFER! By W. Clark Russell.
- CUPID'S GARDEN. By Ellen Thorneycroft Fowler.
- THE IRON PIRATE. By Max Pemberton. (Also *People's Edition*, 6s.)
- THE IMPREGNABLE CITY. By Max Pemberton.
- THE SEA WOLVES. By Max Pemberton.
- LOVEDAY. By A. E. Wickham.
- TINY LUTTRELL. By E. W. Hornung.
- THE WHITE SHIELD. By Bertram Mitford.
- TUXTER'S LITTLE MAID. By G. B. Burgin.
- THE HISPANIOLA PLATE. By John Bloundelle-Burton.
- HIGHWAY OF SORROW. By Hesba Stretton and ***** a Famous Russian Exile.
- KING SOLOMON'S MINES. By H. Rider Haggard. (Also *People's Edition*, 6s.)
- THE LIGHTS OF SYDNEY. By Lillian Turner.
- THE ADMIRABLE LADY BIDDY FANE. By Frank Barrett.
- LIST, YE LANDSMEN! By W. Clark Russell. (Also *People's Edition*, 6s.)
- IA; A Love Story. By Q.
- THE RED TERROR: A STORY OF THE PARIS COMMUNE. By Edward King.
- Field Naturalist's Handbook, The. By the Revs. J. G. WOOD and THEODORE WOOD. *Cheap Edition.* 2s. 6d.
- Figuer's Popular Scientific Works. Illustrated. 3s. 6d. each.
- THE HUMAN RACE. MAMMALIA. OCEAN WORLD.
- THE INSECT WORLD. REPTILES AND BIRDS.
- WORLD BEFORE THE DELUGE. THE VEGETABLE WORLD.
- France, From the Memoirs of a Minister of. By STANLEY WEYMAN. *Cheap Edition.* 3s. 6d.
- Francis Cludde, The Story of. By STANLEY J. WEYMAN. *Cheap Edition.* 3s. 6d.
- Franco-German War, Cassell's History of the. Complete in Two Vols. Containing about 500 Illustrations. 9s. each. *Complete Edition*, 6s. each.
- Garden Flowers, Familiar. With 200 Full-page Coloured Plates. *Cheap Edition.* In Five Vols., 3s. 6d. each.
- THE LITTLE SQUIRE. By Mrs. Henry de la Pasture.
- ZERO THE SLAYER. A Romance. By Lawrence Fletcher.
- INTO THE UNKNOWN. A Romance of South Africa. By Lawrence Fletcher.
- MOUNT DESOLATION. An Australian Romance. By W. Carlton Dawe.
- POMONA'S TRAVELS. By Frank R. Stockton.
- THE REPUTATION OF GEORGE SAVON. By Morley Roberts.
- A PRISON PRINCESS. By Major Arthur Griffiths.
- THE QUEEN'S SCARLET. By George Manville Fenn.
- CAPTURE OF THE "ESTRELLA." THE. A Tale of the Slave Trade. By Commander Claud Harding, R.N.
- THE AWKWARD SQUADS and Other Ulster Stories. By Shan F. Bullock.
- THE AVENGER OF BLOOD. By J. MacLaren Cobban.
- THE MAN IN BLACK. By Stanley Weyman.
- THE MEDICINE LADY. By L. T. Meade.
- PLAYTHINGS AND PARODIES. Short Stories and Sketches. By Darryl Paul.
- "LA BELLA" AND OTHERS. By Egerton Castle.
- FOURTEEN TO ONE, ETC. By Elizabeth Stuart Phelps.
- FATHER STAFFORD. By Anthony Hope.
- THE DOINGS OF RAFFLES HAW. By A. Conan Doyle.
- A FREE-LANCE IN A FAR LAND. By Herbert Compton.

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

- Garden of Swords, The. By MAX PEMBERTON. 6s.
- Gladstone, William Ewart, The Life of. Edited by Sir WEMYSS REID. Illustrated. 7s. 6d. *Superior Edition*, in Two Vols., 9s.
- Gleanings from Popular Authors. Illustd. *Cheap Edition*. 3s. 6d.
- Gun and its Development, The. By W. W. GREENER. With 500 Illustrations. *Entirely New Edition*. 10s. 6d.
- Gun-Room Ditty Box, A. By G. STEWART BOWLES. With a preface by Rear-Admiral LORD CHARLES BERESFORD, M.P. 2s.
- Heavens, The Story of the. By Sir ROBERT STAWELL BALL, LL.D., F.R.S., F.R.A.S. With Coloured Plates. *Popular Edition*. 10s. 6d.
- Heroes of Britain in Peace and War. With 300 Original Illustrations. *Cheap Edition*. Complete in One Vol. 3s. 6d.
- History, A Foot-note to. Eight Years of Trouble in Samoa. By ROBERT LOUIS STEVENSON. 6s.
- Houghton, Lord: The Life, Letters, and Friendships of Richard Monckton Milnes, First Lord Houghton. By Sir WEMYSS REID. In Two Vols., with Two Portraits. 32s.
- Hygiene and Public Health. By B. ARTHUR WHITELEGGE, M.D. 7s. 6d.
- India, Cassell's History of. In One Vol. *Cheap Edition*. 11ld. 7s. 6d.
- Jenetha's Venture. By Colonel HARCOURT. 6s.
- Kilogram; The Confining of the, or, The Battle of the Standards. By H. O. ARNOLD-FORSTER, M.P. Illustrated. 2s. 6d.
- King Solomon's Mines. By H. RIDER HAGGARD. Illustrated. 3s. 6d. *People's Edition*, 6d.
- King's Hussar, A. By H. COMPTON. 3s. 6d.
- Ladies' Physician, The. By A LONDON PHYSICIAN. 3s. 6d.
- Letts's Diaries and other Time-saving Publications published exclusively by CASSELL & COMPANY. (*A list free on application.*)
- Library Year Book. A Record of General Library Progress and Work. Edited by THOMAS GREENWOOD. Illustrated. 2s. 6d.
- Little Huguenot, The. By MAX PEMBERTON. *New Edition*, 1s. 6d.
- Little Novice, The. By ALIX KING. 6s.
- London, Greater. Two Vols. With about 400 Illustrations. *Library Edition*. £1 the set. *Cheap Edition*. 4s. 6d. each.
- London, Old and New. Six Vols. With about 1,200 Illustrations and Maps. *Library Edition*, £3 the set. *Cheap Edition*, 4s. 6d. each.
- London, Cassell's Guide to. Illus. *New Edition*. 6d. Cloth, 1s.
- Manchester, Old and New. By WILLIAM ARTHUR SHAW, M.A. With Original Illustrations. Three Vols. 3rs. 6d.
- Medicine, Manuals for Students of. (*A List forwarded post free.*)
- Music, Illustrated History of. By EMIL NAUMANN. Edited by the Rev. Sir F. A. GORE OUSELEY, Bart. Illustrated. Two Vols. 3rs. 6d.
- Modern Europe, A History of. By C. A. FYFFE, M.A. *Cheap Edition*, 10s. 6d. *Library Edition*, Illustrated. 3 Vols. 7s. 6d. each.
- National Gallery, The. Edited by Sir E. J. POYNTER, P.R.A. Illustrating every Picture in the National Gallery. To be completed in Three Vols. £7 7s. the set, net.
- National Library, Cassell's. 3d. and 6d. List post free on application.

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

- Natural History, Cassell's Concise. By E. PERCEVAL WRIGHT, M.A., M.D., F.L.S. With several Hundred Illustrations. 7s. 6d.
- Natural History, Cassell's New. *Cheap Edition*. With about 2,000 Illustrations. In Three Double Vols. 6s. each.
- Nature and a Camera, With. By RICHARD KEARTON, F.Z.S. With Frontispiece, and 180 Pictures from Photographs. 21s.
- Nature's Wonder Workers. By KATE R. LOVELL. Illustrated. 2s. 6d.
- New Zealand, Pictorial. Illustrated. 6s.
- Novels, Popular. Extra crown 2vo, cloth, 6s. each.
- Roxane. By LOUIS CRESWICK.
- The Ship of Stars. By G. A. T. O'NEILL-COUCH.
- A Bitter Heir. By J. BLOUNDELLE BURTON.
- The Little Novice. By ALIN KING.
- Purple and Fine Linen. By WILLIAM PIGOTT.
- Jenetha's Venture. By COLONEL HARCOURT.
- The Garden of Swords. } By MAN PEMBERTON.
- Kronstadt. } By MAN PEMBERTON.
- A Puritan's Wife. } By MAN PEMBERTON.
- The Shellback; or, At Sea in the 'Sixties. By A. I. C. J. BOYD.
- The Refiner's Fire. By Mrs. L. N. HOCKLIFFE.
- Potsherds. By Mrs. HENRY BIRCHENOUGH.
- Some Persons Unknown. } By E. W. HORNUNG.
- Young Blood. } By E. W. HORNUNG.
- My Lord Duke. } By E. W. HORNUNG.
- The Rogue's March. } By E. W. HORNUNG.
- Spectre Gold. } By E. W. HORNUNG.
- By a Hair's-Breadth. } By HEADON HILL.
- Illustrated Edition.* }
- The Girl at Cobhurst. }
- A Story-Teller's Pack. }
- The Adventures of Captain Horn. } By FRANK STOCKTON.
- (Also at 3s. 6d.) }
- Sentimental Tommy. } By J. M. BARRIE
- The Little Minister. } By J. M. BARRIE
- From the Memoirs of a Minister of France. } By STANLEY WEYMAN.
- The Story of Francis Cludde. } By STANLEY WEYMAN.
- Grace O'Malley: Princess and Pirate. By ROBERT MACHRAY.
- A Limited Success. By SARAH PITT.
- The Wrothams of Wrotham Court. By FRANCES HEATH FRESH-FIELD.
- The Master of Ballantrae. *People's Edition*, 6d.
- Treasure Island. *People's Edition*, 6d.
- The Black Arrow. } By ROBERT LOUIS STEVENSON.
- Kidnapped. *People's Edition*, 6d. } By ROBERT LOUIS STEVENSON.
- Catriona. *People's Edition*, 6d. } Also a *Popular Edition*, 3s. 6d.
- Island Nights' Entertainments. } each.
- 3s. 6d. only. } By R. L. STEVENSON
- The Wrecker. By R. L. STEVENSON } and LLOYD OSBOURNE. *People's Edition*, 6d.
- Ill-gotten Gold. By W. G. TARBET.
- Optics. By Professors GALBRAITH and HAUGHTON. *Entirely New and Enlarged Edition*. Illustrated. 2s. 6d.
- Our Own Country. With 1,200 Illustrations. *Cheap Edition*. Three Double Vols. 5s. each.
- Painting, Practical Guides to. With Coloured Plates:—
- CHINA PAINTING, 5s.; ELEMENTARY FLOWER PAINTING, 3s.;
- NEUTRAL TINT, 5s.; SEPIA, in Two Vols., 3s. each; FLOWERS,
- AND HOW TO PAINT THEM, 5s.; A MANUAL OF OIL PAINTING,
- 2s. 6d.
- Penny Magazine, The New. With 630 Illustrations. Vols. I. and II. 2s. 6d. each.
- Peoples of the World, The. By Dr. ROBERT BROWN. In Six Vols. Illustrated. 7s. 6d. each.
- Peil and Patriotism. True Tales of Heroic Deeds and Startling Adventures. In Two Vols. 4s. each. Also in One Vol., 7s. 6d.

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

- Phrase and Fable, Dr. Brewer's Dictionary of. *New and Enlarged Edition.* 10s. 6d. Also in half-morocco, Two Vols., 15s.
- Picturesque America. In 4 Vols., with 48 Steel Plates and 800 Wood Engravings. £12 12s. the set. *Popular Edition*, 18s. each.
- Picturesque Canada. With 600 Original Illustrations. Two Vols. £9 9s. the Set.
- Picturesque Europe. *POPULAR EDITION.* In Five Vols. Each containing 13 Litho Plates, and nearly 200 Illustrations. 18s. each. *Cheap Edition.* (The British Isles). Two Vols. in One. 10s. 6d.
- Picturesque Mediterranean, The. With Magnificent Original Illustrations by the leading Artists of the Day. Complete in Two Vols. £2 2s. each.
- Pigeons, Fulton's Book of. Edited by LEWIS WRIGHT. Revised, Enlarged, and Supplemented by the Rev. W. F. LUMLEY. With 50 full-page Illustrations. *Popular Edition*, 10s. 6d. Original Edition, with 50 Coloured Plates and Numerous Wood-Engravings. 21s.
- Planet, The Story of Our. By Prof. BONNEY, F.R.S., &c. With Coloured Plates and Maps and about 100 Illustrations. *Cheap Edition.* 7s. 6d.
- Playfair, Lord. Memoirs and Correspondence of Lyon Playfair, First Lord Playfair of St. Andrews. By Sir WENYSS REID. With Two Portraits. 21s.
- Poultry, The Book of. By LEWIS WRIGHT. *Popular Edition.* 10s. 6d.
- Poultry, The Illustrated Book of. By LEWIS WRIGHT. With Fifty Coloured Plates. *New Edition in Preparation.*
- Poultry Keeper, The Practical. By LEWIS WRIGHT. With Eight Coloured Plates and numerous Illustrations in Text. *New and Enlarged Edition.* 3s. 6d.
- Purple and Fine Linen. By WILLIAM PIGOTT. 6s.
- Q's Works, Uniform Edition of. 5s. each.
 Dead Man's Rock. Also *People's Edition*, 6d. The Splendid Spur.
 The Blue Pavilions. The Astonishing History of Troy Town.
 "I Saw Three Ships," and other Winter's Tales. Noughts and Crosses.
 The Delectable Duchy. Wandering Heath.
- Queen's Empire, The. Containing nearly 700 splendid full-page Illustrations. Complete in Two Vols. 9s. each.
- Queen's London, The. Containing nearly 400 Exquisite Views of London and its Environs, together with a fine series of Pictures of the Queen's Diamond Jubilee Procession. Enlarged Edition. 10s. 6d.
- Railway Guides, Official Illustrated. With Illustrations, Maps, &c. Price 1s. each; or in cloth, 1s. 6d. each.
- LONDON AND NORTH WESTERN RAILWAY, GREAT WESTERN RAILWAY, MIDLAND RAILWAY, GREAT NORTHERN RAILWAY, GREAT EASTERN RAILWAY, LONDON AND SOUTH WESTERN RAILWAY, LONDON, BRIGHTON AND SOUTH COAST RAILWAY, SOUTH EASTERN AND CHATHAM AND DOVER RAILWAYS. Abridged and Popular Editions of the above Guides, paper covers, 3d. each.
- Rivers of Great Britain: Descriptive, Historical, Pictorial.
 RIVERS OF THE SOUTH AND WEST COASTS. 42s.
 THE ROYAL RIVER: The Thames, from Source to Sea. 16s.
 RIVERS OF THE EAST COAST. *Popular Edition*, 16s.

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

- Robinson Crusoe, Cassell's Fine-Art Edition. *Cheap Edition.* 3s. 6d. or 5s.
- Roxane. By LOUIS CRESWICK. EA. crown 8vo, cloth, 6s.
- Royal Academy Pictures. In One Vol. 7s. 6d.
- Russo-Turkish War, Cassell's History of. With about 500 Illustrations. *New Edition.* Two Vols., 9s. each.
- Saturday Journal, Cassell's. Yearly Volume, cloth, 7s. 6d.
- Science Series, The Century. Consisting of Biographies of Eminent Scientific Men of the present Century. Edited by Sir HENRY ROSCOE, D.C.L., F.R.S. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d. each.
- John Dalton and the Rise of Modern Chemistry. By Sir HENRY E. ROSCOE, F.R.S.
- Major Rennell, F.R.S., and the Rise of English Geography. By SIR CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, C.B., F.R.S.
- Justus Von Liebig His Life and Work. By W. A. SHENSTONE, F.I.C.
- The Herschels and Modern Astronomy. By Miss AGNES M. CLIFKE.
- Charles Lyell and Modern Geology. By Professor T. G. BONNEY, F.R.S.
- J. Clerk Maxwell and Modern Physics. By R. T. GLAZEBROOK, F.R.S.
- Humphry Davy, Poet and Philosopher. By T. E. THORPE, F.R.S.
- Charles Darwin and the Theory of Natural Selection. By EDWARD B. POULTON, M.A., F.R.S.
- Pasteur. By PERCY FRANKLAND, Ph.D. (Wurzburg), B.Sc. (Lond.), and Mrs. PERCY FRANKLAND.
- Michael Faraday: His Life and Work. By Professor SILVANUS P. THOMPSON, F.R.S. 5s.
- Science for All. Edited by Dr. ROBERT BROWN. *Cheap Edition.* In Five Vols. 3s. 6d. each.
- Sea, The Story of the. Edited by Q. Illustrated. In Two Vols. 9s. each. *Cheap Edition.* 5s. each.
- Shaftesbury, The Seventh Earl of, K.G., The Life and Work of. By EDWIN HODDER. *Cheap Edition.* 3s. 6d.
- Shakespeare, The Plays of. Edited by Professor HENRY MORLEY. Complete in Thirteen Vols., cloth, 21s.; also 39 Vols., cloth, in box, 21s.; half-morocco, cloth sides, 42s.
- Shakespeare, The England of. *New Edition.* By E. GOADBY. With Full-page Illustrations. 2s. 6d.
- Shakspeare, The Leopold. With 400 Illustrations. *Cheap Edition.* 3s. 6d. Cloth gilt, gilt edges, 5s.; roxburgh, 7s. 6d.
- Shakspeare, The Royal. With 50 Full-page Illustrations. Complete in Three Vols. 3s. 6d. each.
- Ship of Stars, The. By Q (A. T. QUILLER-BOUCH). 6s.
- Sights and Scenes in Oxford City and University. With 100 Illustrations after Original Photographs. In One Vol. 21s. net.
- Social England. A Record of the Progress of the People. By various Writers. Edited by H. D. TRAILL, D.C.L. (Completion.) Vols. I., II. & III., 15s. each. Vols. IV. & V., 17s. each. Vol. VI., 18s.
- Sports and Pastimes, Cassell's Complete Book of. *Cheap Edition.* With more than 900 Illustrations. Medium 8vo, 992 pages, cloth, 3s. 6d.
- Star-Land. By Sir R. S. BALL, LL.D., etc. Illustrated. *New and Enlarged Edition,* entirely reset, 7s. 6d.

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

- Story of my Life, The.** By the Rt. Hon. Sir RICHARD TEMPLE, Bart., G.C.S.I., &c. Two Vols. 21s.
- Sun, The.** By Sir ROBERT STAWELL BALL, LL.D., F.R.S., F.R.A.S. With Eight Coloured Plates and other Illns. *Cheap Edition.* 10s. 6d.
- Technical Instruction.** A Series of Practical Volumes. Edited by P. N. HASLUCK. Illustrated. 2s. each.
Vol. I. Practical Staircase Joinery
Vol. II. Practical Metal Plate Work.
(*Other Volumes in Preparation.*)
- Tidal Thames, The.** By GRANT ALLEN. With India Proof Impressions of Twenty magnificent Full-page Photogravure Plates, and with many other Illustrations in the Text after Original Drawings by W. L. WYLLIE, A.R.A. *New Edition*, cloth, 42s. net.
- Treasure Island.** By R. L. STEVENSON. *New Illustrated Edition.* 6s.
- Trees, Some Familiar.** By G. S. BOULGER, F.L.S. With 40 Coloured Plates. 12s. 6d.
- "Unicode": the Universal Telegraphic Phrase Book.** *Desk or Pocket Edition.* 2s. 6d.
- Universal History, Cassell's Illustrated.** Four Vols. 9s. each. *Cheap Edition*, 5s. each.
- Vicat Cole, R.A., The Life and Paintings of.** Illus. In 3 Vols. £3 3s.
- Wars of the Nineties, The.** A History of the Warfare of the last Ten Years of the 19th Century. Profusely Illustrated. In One Vol. 7s. 6d.
- Westminster Abbey, Annals of.** By E. T. BRADLEY (Mrs. A. MURRAY SMITH). Illustrated. *Cheap Edition*, 21s.
- Wild Birds, Familiar.** By W. SWAYSLAND. Four Series. With 40 Coloured Plates in each. (Sold in sets only; price on application.)
- Wild Flowers, Familiar.** By F. E. HULME, F.L.S., F.S.A. With 200 Beautiful Coloured Plates. *Cheap Edition.* In Six Vols. 3s. 6d. each.
- Wild Life at Home: How to Study and Photograph It.** By RICHARD KEARTON, F.Z.S. Illustrated from Photographs. 6s.
- Wit and Humour, Cassell's New World of.** 2 Vols. 6s. each.
- Work. The Illustrated Weekly Journal for Mechanics.** Half-Yearly Vols. 4s. each.
- "Work" Handbooks.** Practical Manuals prepared *under the direction* of PAUL N. HASLUCK, Editor of *Work*. Illustrated. 1s. each.
- World of Wonders.** Illus. *Cheap Edition.* Two Vols. 4s. 6d. each.
-

ILLUSTRATED MAGAZINES.

- The Quiver.** Monthly, 6d.
- Cassell's Magazine.** Monthly, 6d.
- The New Penny Magazine.** Weekly, 1d.; Monthly, 6d.
- "Little Folks" Magazine.** Monthly, 6d.
- The Magazine of Art.** Monthly, 1s. 4d.
- Cassell's Saturday Journal.** Weekly, 1d.; Monthly, 6d.
- "Chums." The Paper for Boys.** Weekly, 1d.; Monthly, 6d.
- Work.** Weekly, 1d.; Monthly, 6d.
- Building World.** Weekly, 1d.; Monthly, 6d.
- The Gardener.** Weekly, 1d.

CASSELL & COMPANY, LIMITED, Ludgate Hill, London.

Bibles and Religious Works.

- Bible Biographies.** Illustrated. 1s. 6d. each.
 The Story of Moses and Joshua. By the Rev. J. TELFORD.
 The Story of the Judges. By the Rev. J. WYCLIFFE GEDGE.
 The Story of Samuel and Saul. By the Rev. D. C. TOVEY.
 The Story of David. By the Rev. J. WILD.
 The Story of Joseph. Its Lessons for To-day. By the Rev. GEORGE BAINTON.
- The Story of Jesus.** In Verse. By J. R. MACDUFF, D.D.
- Bible, Cassell's Illustrated Family.** With 900 Illustrations. Leather, gilt edges, £2 10s.
- Bible Educator, The.** Edited by the Very Rev. Dean PLUMPTRE, D.D. With Illustrations, Maps, &c. Four Vols., cloth, 6s. each.
- Bible Dictionary, Cassell's Concise.** By the Rev. ROBERT HUNTER, LL.D. Illustrated. 7s. 6d.
- Bible Student in the British Museum, The.** By the Rev. J. G. KITCHIN, M.A. *New and Revised Edition.* 1s. 4d.
- Bunyan, Cassell's Illustrated.** With 200 Original Illustrations. *Cheap Edition.* 3s. 6d.
- Child's Bible, The.** With 200 Illustrations. 150th Thousand. 7s. 6d.
- Child's Life of Christ, The.** With 200 Illustrations. 7s. 6d.
- Church of England, The.** A History for the People. By the Very Rev. H. D. M. SPENCE, D.D., Dean of Gloucester. Illustrated. Complete in Four Vols. 6s. each.
- Church Reform in Spain and Portugal.** By the Rev. H. E. NOYES, D.D. Illustrated. 2s. 6d.
- Doré Bible.** With 200 Full-page Illustrations by GUSTAVE DORÉ. *Popular Edition.* 15s.
- Early Days of Christianity, The.** By the Very Rev. Dean FARRAR, D.D., F.R.S. LIBRARY EDITION. Two Vols., 24s.; MOROCCO, £2 2s. POPULAR EDITION. Complete in One Volume; cloth, gilt edges, 7s. 6d.; tree-calf, 15s. *Cheap Edition.* Cloth gilt, 3s. 6d.
- Family Prayer-Book, The.** Edited by Rev. Canon GARLETT, M.A., and Rev. S. MARTIN. With Full-page Illustrations. 7s. 6d.
- Gleanings after Harvest.** Studies and Sketches by the Rev. JOHN R. VERNON, M.A. Illustrated. *Cheap Edition.* 3s. 6d.
- "Graven in the Rock."** By the Rev. Dr. SAMUEL KINNS, F.R.A.S. Illustrated. *Library Edition.* Two Vols., 15s.
- "Heart Chords." A Series of Works by Eminent Divines.** 1s. each.
- MY COMFORT IN SORROW.** By HUGH MACMILLAN, D.D.
- MY BIBLE.** By the Right Rev. W. BOYD CARPENTER, Bishop of Ripon.
- MY FATHER.** By the Right Rev. ASHTON OXENDEN, late Bishop of Montreal.
- MY WORK FOR GOD.** By the Right Rev. Bishop COTTERILL.
- MY ASPIRATIONS.** By the Rev. G. MATHEWSON, D.D.
- MY EMOTIONAL LIFE.** By the Rev. Preb. CHADWICK, D.D.
- MY BODY.** By the Rev. Prof. W. G. BLAIRIE, D.D.
- MY GROWTH IN DIVINE LIFE.** By the Rev. Preb. REYNOLDS, M.A.
- MY SOUL.** By the Rev. P. B. POWER, M.A.
- MY HEREAFTER.** By the Very Rev. Dean BICKERSTETH.
- MY WALK WITH GOD.** By the Very Rev. Dean MONTGOMERY.
- MY AIDS TO THE DIVINE LIFE.** By the Very Rev. Dean BOYLE.
- MY SOURCES OF STRENGTH.** By the Rev. E. E. JENKINS, M.A., Secretary of Wesleyan Missionary Society.
- Helps to Belief.** A Series of Helpful Manuals on the Religious Difficulties of the Day. Edited by the Rev. CANON SHORE. Cloth, 1s. each.
- CREATION.** By Harvey Goodwin, D.D., late Bishop of Carlisle.
- MIRACLES.** By the Rev. Brownlow Maitland, M.A.
- PRAYER.** By the Rev. Canon Shore, M.A.
- THE ATONEMENT.** By William Connor Magee, D.D., late Archbishop of York.

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

Holy Land and the Bible. A Book of Scripture Illustrations gathered in Palestine. By the Rev. CUNNINGHAM GEIKIE, D.D. CHEAP EDITION. 7s. 6d. SUPERIOR EDITION. With 24 Plates. Cloth gilt, gilt edges, 10s. 6d.

New Light on the Bible and the Holy Land. By BASIL T. A. EVETTS, M.A. Illustrated. Cloth, 7s. 6d.

Life of Christ, The. By the Very Rev. Dean FARRAR. CHEAP EDITION. With 16 Full-page Plates. 3s. 6d. LIBRARY EDITION. Two Vols. Cloth, 24s.; morocco, 42s. LARGE TYPE ILLUSTRATED EDITION. Cloth, 7s. 6d.; cloth, full gilt, gilt edges, 10s. 6d. POPULAR EDITION. With 16 Full-page Plates. 7s. 6d.

Matin and Vesper Bells. Earlier and Later Collected Poems (Chiefly Sacred). By J. R. MACDUFF, D.D. Two Vols. 7s. 6d. the set.

Methodism, Side Lights on the Conflicts of. During the Second Quarter of the Nineteenth Century, 1827-1852. From the Notes of the late Rev. JOSEPH FOWLER of the Debates of the Wesleyan Conference. Cloth, 8s. *Popular Edition.* Unabridged. Cloth, 3s. 6d.

Moses and Geology; or, The Harmony of the Bible with Science. By the Rev. SAMUEL KINNS, Ph.D., F.R.A.S. Illus. 10s. 6d.

Commentary for English Readers. Edited by Bishop ELLICOTT. With Contributions by eminent Scholars and Divines:—

New Testament. *Original Edition.* Three Vols., 21s. each; or in half-morocco, £4 12s. 6d. the set. *Popular Edition.* Unabridged. Three Vols., 4s. each.

Old Testament. *Original Edition.* Five Vols., 21s. each; or in half-morocco, £7 17s. 6d. the set. *Popular Edition.* Unabridged. Five Vols., 4s. each.

* * * *The Complete Set of Eight Volumes in the Popular Edition is supplied at 30s.*

New Testament Commentary. Edited by Bishop ELLICOTT. Handy Volume Edition, suitable for school and general use. Thirteen Vols. from 2s. 6d. to 3s. 6d.

Old Testament Commentary. Edited by Bishop ELLICOTT. Handy Volume Edition, suitable for school and general use. Genesis, 3s. 6d. Exodus, 3s. Leviticus, 3s. Numbers, 2s. 6d. Deuteronomy, 2s. 6d.

Plain Introductions to the Books of the Old Testament. Edited by Bishop ELLICOTT. 3s. 6d.

Plain Introductions to the Books of the New Testament. Edited by Bishop ELLICOTT. 3s. 6d.

Protestantism, The History of. By the Rev. J. A. WYLIE, LL.D. Containing upwards of 600 Original Illustrations. *Cheap Edition.* Three Vols. 3s. 6d. each.

Quiver Yearly Volume, The. With about 900 Original Illus. 7s. 6d.

St. Paul, The Life and Work of. By the Very Rev. Dean FARRAR. CHEAP EDITION. With 16 Full-page Plates, 3s. 6d.; CHEAP ILLUSTRATED EDITION, 7s. 6d. LIBRARY EDITION. Two Vols., 24s. or 42s. ILLUSTRATED EDITION, £1 1s. or £2 2s. POPULAR EDITION. 7s. 6d.

"Six Hundred Years"; or, Historical Sketches of Eminent Men and Women who have more or less come into contact with the Abbey and Church of Holy Trinity, Minorities, from 1293 to 1893. With 65 Illustrations. By the Vicar, the Rev. Dr. SAMUEL KINNS. 15s.

"Sunday," Its Origin, History, and Present Obligation. By the Ven. Archdeacon BESSEY, D.C.L. *Fifth Edition.* 7s. 6d.

Educational Works and Students' Manuals.

- Alphabet, Cassell's Pictorial. 2s. and 2s. 6d.
Arithmetics, Cassell's "Belle Sauvage." By GEORGE RICKS, B.Sc.
(Lond.) With Test Cards. (*List on application.*)
Atlas, Cassell's Popular. Containing 24 Coloured Maps. 1s. 6d.
Blackboard Drawing. By W. E. SPARKES. Illustrated. 5s.
Book-Keeping. By THEODORE JONES. For Schools, 2s.; cloth, 3s.
For the Million, 2s.; cloth, 3s. Books for Jones's System, 2s.
British Empire Map of the World. By G. R. PARKIN and J. G.
BARTHOLOMEW, F.R.G.S. Mounted or Folded. 25s.
Chemistry, The Public School. By J. H. ANDERSON, M.A. 2s. 6d.
Cookery for Schools. By LIZZIE HERITAGE. 6d.
Dulce Domum. Rhymes and Songs for Children. Edited by JOHN
FARMER, Editor of "Gaudefamus," &c. Old Notation and Words, 5s.
N.B.—The words of the Songs in "Dulce Domum" (with the Airs both
in Tonic Sol-fa and Old Notation) can be had in Two Parts, 6d. each.
England, A History of. By H. O. ARNOLD-FORSTER, M.P. Illustrated. 5s.
Euclid, Cassell's. Edited by Prof. WALLACE, M.A. 1s.
Experimental Geometry. By PAUL BERT. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.
Founders of the Empire. A Biographical Reading Book for School
and Home. By PHILIP GIBBS. Illustrated. 1s. 8d.
French, Cassell's Lessons in. *An entirely New and Revised Edition.*
Parts I. and II., 2s. each. Complete in One Vol. 3s. 6d.
French-English and English-French Dictionary. 3s. 6d. or 5s.
French Reader, Cassell's Public School. By G. S. CONRAD. 2s. 6d.
Gaudefamus. Songs for Colleges and Schools. Edited by JOHN FARMER.
5s. Words only, paper covers, 6d.; cloth, 9d.
Geography: A Practical Method of Teaching. Vol. I., England and
Wales. Vol. II., Europe. By F. H. OVERTON, F.G.S. 6d. each.
Tracing Book, containing 22 leaves, 2d.
German Dictionary, Cassell's. (German-English, English-German.)
Cheap Edition. Cloth, 3s. 6d.; half-morocco, 5s.
Hand and Eye Training. By G. RICKS, B.Sc. 2 Vols., with 16 Coloured
Plates in each, 6s. each. Cards for Class Use, 5 sets, 1s. each.
Hand and Eye Training. By GEORGE RICKS, B.Sc., and JOSEPH
VAUGHAN. Illustrated. Vol. I. Designing with Coloured Papers;
Vol. II. Cardboard Work, 2s. each. Vol. III. Colour Work
and Design, 3s.
Historical Cartoons, Cassell's Coloured. Size 45 in. x 35 in. 2s.
each. Mounted on canvas and varnished, with rollers, 5s. each.
In Danger's Hour; or, Stout Hearts and Stirring Deeds. A Book
of Adventures for School and Home. With Coloured Plates and other
Illustrations. Cloth, 1s. 8d.; bevelled boards, 2s. 6d.
Italian Lessons, with Exercises, Cassell's. Cloth, 2s.
Latin-English and English-Latin Dictionary. 3s. 6d. and 5s.
Latin Primer, The First. By Prof. POSTGATE. 1s.
Latin Primer, The New. By Prof. J. P. POSTGATE. Crown 8vo, 2s. 5d.
Latin Prose for Lower Forms. By M. A. BAYFIELD, M.A. 2s. 6d.
Laws of Every-day Life. By H. O. ARNOLD-FORSTER, M.P. 1s. 6d.
Marlborough Books:—Arithmetic Examples, 3s. French Exercises,
3s. 6d. French Grammar, 2s. 6d. German Grammar, 3s. 6d.
Mechanics and Machine Design, Numerical Examples in Practical.
By R. G. BLAINE, M.E. *Revised and Enlarged.* Illus. 2s. 6d.

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

- Mechanics for Young Beginners.** By the Rev. J. G. EASTON, M.A. *Cheap Edition.* 2s. 6d.
- Mechanics, Applied.** By JOHN PERRY, M.E., D.Sc., &c. Illustd. 7s. 6d.
- Metric Charts, Cassell's Approved.** Two Coloured Sheets, 42 in. by 22½ in., illustrating by Designs and Explanations the Metric System. 1s. each. Mounted with Rollers, 3s. each. The two in one with Rollers, 5s. each.
- Models and Common Objects, How to Draw from.** By W. E. SPARKES. Illustrated. 3s.
- Models, Common Objects, and Casts of Ornament, How to Shade from.** By W. E. SPARKES. With 25 Plates by the Author. 3s.
- Object Lessons from Nature.** By Prof. L. C. MIALL, F.L.S. Fully Illustrated. *New and Enlarged Edition.* Two Vols., 1s. 6d. each.
- Physiology for Schools.** By A. T. SCHOFIELD, M.D., &c. Illus. Cloth, 1s. 9d.; Three Parts, paper, 5d. each; or cloth limp, 6d. each.
- Poetry for Children, Cassell's.** 6 Books, 1d. each; in One Vol., 6d.
- Popular Educator, Cassell's.** With Coloured Plates and Maps, and other Illustrations. *Cheap Edition.* In 8 Vols., 3s. 6d. each. Also in 8 Vols., 5s. each.
- Readers, Cassell's Classical, for School and Home.** Illus. Vol. I. (for young children), 1s. 8d.; Vol. II. (for boys and girls) 2s. 6d.
- Readers, Cassell's "Belle Sauvage."** An entirely New Series. Fully Illustrated. Strongly bound in cloth. (*List on application.*)
- Readers, Cassell's "Higher Class."** (*List on application.*)
- Readers, Cassell's Readable.** Illustrated (*List on application.*)
- Readers for Infant Schools, Coloured.** Three Books. 4d. each.
- Reader, The Citizen.** By H. O. ARNOLD-FORSTER, M.P. Illustrated. 1s. 6d. Also a *Scottish Edition*, cloth, 1s. 6d.
- Reader, The Temperance.** By J. DENNIS HIRD. 1s. or 1s. 6d.
- Readers, Geographical, Cassell's New.** Illud. (*List on application.*)
- Readers, The "Modern School" Geographical.** (*List on application.*)
- Readers, The "Modern School."** Illustrated. (*List on application.*)
- Reckoning, Howard's Art of.** By C. FRUSHER HOWARD. Paper covers, 1s.; cloth, 2s. *New Edition.* 5s.
- Round the Empire.** By G. R. PARKIN. Fully Illustrated. 1s. 6d.
- Shakspeare's Plays for School Use.** 9 Books. Illustrated. 6d. each.
- Spelling, A Complete Manual of.** By J. D. MORELL, LL.D. Cloth, 1s. *Cheap Edition*, 6d.
- Technical Manuals, Cassell's.** Illustrated throughout. Sixteen Books from 2s. to 4s. 6d. (*List on application.*)
- Technical Educator, Cassell's.** With Coloured Plates and Engravings. Complete in Six Volumes. 3s. 6d. each.
- Technology, Manuals of.** Edited by Prof. AVRTON, F.R.S., and RICHARD WORMELL, D.Sc., M.A. Illustrated throughout. Seven Books from 3s. 6d. to 5s. (*List on application.*)
- Things New and Old; or, Stories from English History.** By H. O. ARNOLD-FORSTER, M.P. Illustrated, 7 Books from 9d. to 1s. 8d.
- This World of Ours.** By H. O. ARNOLD-FORSTER, M.P. Illustrated. *Cheap Edition.* 2s. 6d.
- Young Citizen, The; or, Lessons in Our Laws.** By H. F. LESTER, B.A. Fully Illustrated, 2s. 6d. Also issued in Two Parts under the title of "Lessons in Our Laws." 1s. 6d. each.

Books for Young People.

- Master Charlie. By C. S. HARRISON and S. H. HAMER. Illustrated. Coloured boards. 1s. 6d.
- The Master of the Strong Hearts. A Story of Custer's Last Rally. By E. S. BROOKS. Illustrated. 2s. 6d.
- Whys and Other Whys; or, Curious Creatures and Their Tales. By S. H. HAMER and HARRY B. NEILSON. Paper boards, 3s. 6d. Cloth, bevelled boards, gilt edges, full gilt, 5s.
- Notable Shipwrecks. *Revised and Enlarged Edition.* 1s. *Illustrated Edition,* 2s.
- Two Old Ladies, Two Foolish Fairies, and a Tom Cat. The Surprising Adventures of Tuppy and Tue. A New Fairy Story. By MAGGIE BROWNE. With Four Coloured Plates and other Illustrations. 3s. 6d.
- Micky Magee's Menagerie; or, Strange Animals and their Doings. By S. H. HAMER. With Eight Coloured Plates and other Illustrations by HARRY NEILSON. 1s. 6d.
- The "Victoria" Painting Book for Little Folks. Illustrated. 1s.
- "Little Folks" Half-Yearly Volume. Containing 430 pages, with Six Full-page Coloured Plates, and numerous other Pictures printed in Colour. Picture Boards, 3s. 6d.; cloth gilt, gilt edges, 5s. each.
- Bo-Peep. A Book for the Little Ones. With Original Stories and Verses. Illustrated with Full-page Coloured Plates, and numerous Pictures in Colour. Yearly Volume. Picture Boards, 2s. 6d.; cloth, 3s. 6d.
- Beneath the Banner. Being Narratives of Noble Lives and Brave Deeds. By F. J. CROSS. Illustrated. Limp cloth, 1s. Cloth gilt, 2s.
- Good Morning! Good Night! By F. J. CROSS. Illustrated. Limp cloth, 1s., or cloth boards, gilt lettered, 2s.
- Merry Girls of England. By L. T. MEADE. 3s. 6d.
- Beyond the Blue Mountains. By L. T. MEADE. 5s.
- A Sunday Story-Book. By MAGGIE BROWNE. Illustrated. 3s. 6d.
- Pleasant Work for Busy Fingers. By MAGGIE BROWNE. Illus. 2s. 6d.
- Magic at Home. By Prof. HOFFMAN. Illustrated. Cloth gilt, 3s. 6d.
- Little Mother Bunch. By Mrs. MOLESWORTH. Illus. 2s. 6d.
- Heroes of Every-day Life. By LAURA LANE. Illustrated. 2s. 6d.
- Books for Young People. Illustrated. 3s. 6d. each.
- | | |
|--|--|
| The Rebellion of Lil Carrington. By L. T. MEADE. | The King's Command: A Story for Girls. By Maggie Symington. |
| Under Bayard's Banner. By Henry Fifth. | *The Palace Beautiful. By L. T. Meade. |
| Told Out of School. By A. J. Daniels. | Polly. A New-Fashioned Girl. By L. T. Meade. |
| Red Rose and Tiger Lily. By L. T. Meade. | "Follow my Leader." By Talbot Baines Reed. |
| The Romance of Invention. By James Burnley. | A World of Girls: The Story of a School. By L. T. Meade. |
| *Bashful Fifteen. By L. T. Meade. | Lost Among White Africans. By David Kerr. |
| *The White House at Inch Gow. By Mrs. Pitt. | For Fortune and Glory: A Story of the Sudan War. By Lewis Hough. |
| A Sweet Girl Graduate. By L. T. Meade. | Bob Lovell's Career. By Edward A. Ellis. |

* Also published in superior binding, 5s. each.

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

- "Peeps Abroad" Library. *Cheap Editions.* Gilt edges, 2s. 6d. each.
- | | |
|--|---|
| Rambles Round London. By C. L. Matéaux. Illustrated. | Wild Adventures in Wild Places. By Dr. Gordon Stables, R.N. Illustrated. |
| Around and About Old England. By C. L. Matéaux. Illustrated. | Modern Explorers. By Thomas Frost. Illustrated. <i>New and Cheaper Edition.</i> |
| Paws and Claws. By one of the Authors of "Poems written for a Child." Illustrated. | Early Explorers. By Thomas Frost. |
| The True Robinson Crusoes. Cloth gilt. | Home Chat with our Young Folks. Illustrated throughout. |
| Peeps Abroad for Folks at Home. Illustrated throughout. | Jungle, Peak, and Plain. Illustrated throughout. |

- The "Cross and Crown" Series. Illustrated. 2s. 6d. each.
- | | |
|--|--|
| Freedom's Sword: A Story of the Days of Wallace and Bruce. By Annie S. Swan. | By Fire and Sword: A Story of the Huguenots. By Thomas Archer. |
| Strong to Suffer. A Story of the Jews. By E. Wynne. | Adam Hepburn's Vow: A Tale of Kirk and Covenant. By Annie S. Swan. |
| No. XIII.: or, The Story of the Lost Vestal. A Tale of Early Christian Days. By Emma Marshall. | Through Trial to Triumph. By Madeline B. Hunt. |

- "Golden Mottoes" Series, The. Each Book containing 208 pages, with Four full-page Original Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth gilt, 2s. each.
- | | |
|--|---|
| "Nil Desperandum." By the Rev F. Langbridge, M.A. | "Aim at a Sure End." By Emily Searchfield. |
| "Foremost if I Can." By Helen Atteridge. | "He Conquers who Endures." By the Author of "May Cunningham's Trial," &c. |
| "Honour is my Guide." By Jeanie Hering (Mrs. Adams-Acton). | |

- "Wanted—a King" Series. Illustrated. 2s. 6d. each.
- | |
|--|
| Robin's Ride. By Ellinor Davenport Adams. |
| Wanted—a King; or, How Merle set the Nursery Rhymes to Rights. By Maggie Browne. |
| Fairy Tales in Other Lands. By Julia Goddard. |

- Cassell's Picture Story Books. Each containing about Sixty Pages of Pictures and Stories, &c. 6d. each.

Little Talks.	Daisy's Story Book.	Auntie's Stories.
Bright Stars.	Dot's Story Book.	Birdie's Story Book.
Nursery Toys.	A Nest of Stories.	Little Chimes.
Pet's Posy.	Good-Night Stories.	A Sheaf of Tales.
Tiny Tales.	Chats for Small Chatterers.	Dewdrop Stories.

- Illustrated Books for the Little Ones. Containing interesting Stories. All Illustrated. 9d. each.

Bright Tales & Funny Pictures.	Little Tattle Tales.
Merry Little Tales.	Up and Down the Garden.
Little Tales for Little People.	All Sorts of Adventures.
Little People and Their Pets.	Our Holiday Hours.
Tales Told for Sunday.	Some Farm Friends.
Sunday Stories for Small People.	Wandering Ways.
Stories and Pictures for Sunday.	Dumb Friends.
Bible Pictures for Boys and Girls.	Those Golden Sands.
Firelight Stories.	Little Mothers and their Children.
Sunlight and Shade.	Our School-day Hours.
Rub-a-Dub Tales.	Creatures Tame.
Fine Feathers and Fluffy Fur.	Creatures Wild.
Scrambles and Scrapes.	

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

Cassell's Shilling Story Books. All Illustrated, and containing Interesting Stories.

Bunt and the Boys.
The Heir of Elmdale.
Thorns and Tangles.
The Cuckoo in the Robin's Nest.
The History of Five Little Pitchers.
Surly Bob.

The Giant's Cradle.
Shag and Doll.
The Cost of Revenge
Clever Frank.
Among the Redskins.
The Ferryman of Brill.
Harry Maxwell.

The World's Workers. A Series of New and Original Volumes. With Portraits printed on a tint as Frontispiece. 1s. each.

John Cassell. By G. Holden Pike.
Richard Cobden. By R. Cowling.
Charles Haddon Spurgeon. By G. Holden Pike.

Thomas A. Edison and Samuel F. B. Morse. By Dr. Denslow and J. Marsh Parker.
Sir Titus Salt and George Moore. By J. Burnley.
George and Robert Stephenson. By C. L. Matheux.

General Gordon. By the Rev. S. A. Swane.
Sir Henry Havelock and Colin Campbell. Lord Clyde. By E. C. Phillips.
David Livingstone. By Robert Smiles.

Charles Dickens. By his Eldest Daughter.
Handel. By Eliza Clarke. (Swane)
Turner the Artist. By the Rev. S. A.
Abraham Lincoln. By Ernest Foster
Benjamin Franklin. By E. M. Tomkinson.
Dr. Arnold of Rugby. By Rose E. Selie.

The Earl of Shaftesbury. By Henry Frith.
Dr. Guthrie, Father Mathew, Elihu Burritt, George Livesey. By John W. Kirtan, LL.D.
George Müller and Andrew Reed. By E. R. Fitman.

Sarah Robinson, Agnes Weston, and Mrs. Meredith. By E. M. Tomkinson. 1s. only.
Mrs. Somerville and Mary Carpenter. By Phyllis Browne. 1s. only.

* The above Works can also be had Three in One Vol., cloth, gilt edges, 3s.

Cassell's Eighteenpenny Story Books. Illustrated.

Three Wee Ulster Lassies.
Up the Ladder.
Dick's Hero; and other Stories.
The Chip Boy.
Roses from Thorns.
The Young Berringtons.
Faith's Father.

By Land and Sea.
Jeff and Left.
Tom Morris's Error.
"Through Flood—Through Fire"; and other Stories.
The Girl with the Golden Locks.
Stories of the Olden Time.

Gift Books for Young People. Original Illustrations in each.

The Boy Hunters of Kentucky. By Edward S. Ellis.
Red Feather: a Tale of the American Frontier. By Edward S. Ellis.
Rhoda's Reward; or, "If Wishes were Horses."
Jack Marston's Anchor.
Frank's Life-Battle; or, The Three Friends.
Fritters. By Sarah Pitt

By Popular Authors. With Four Cloth gilt, 1s. 6d. each.
Major Monk's Motto. By the Rev. F. Langbridge.
Trixy. By Maggie Symington.
Uncle William's Charges; or, The Broken Trust.
Tim Thomson's Trial. By George Weatherly.
Ruth's Life-Work. By the Rev. Joseph Johnson

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

Cassell's Two-Shilling Story Books. Illustrated.

Stories of the Tower.
Mr. Burke's Nieces.
Little Flotsam.
The Children of the Court

Peggy, and other Tales.
The Four Cats of the Tippetons.
Little Folks' Sunday Book.
Poor Nelly.
In Mischievous Again.

Books by Edward S. Ellis. Illustrated. Cloth, 2s. 6d. each.

In Red Indian Trails.
Uncrowning a King.
Two Boys in Wyoming.
Klondike Nuggets.
Scouts and Comrades: or
Tecumseh, Chief of the
Shawanoes.
Cowmen and Rustlers.
A Strange Craft and its
Wonderful Voyages.
Pontiac, Chief of the Ottawas.
In the Days of the Pioneers.
Shod with Silence.
The Phantom of the River.
The Great Cattle Trail.
The Path in the Ravine.
The Young Ranchers.
The Hunters of the Ozark.

The Camp in the Mountains.
Ned in the Woods. A Tale of
Early Days in the West.
Down the Mississippi.
Ned on the River. A Tale of
Indian River Warfare.
The Last War Trail.
Footprints in the Forest.
Up the Tapajoes.
Ned in the Block House. A
Story of Pioneer Life in Kentucky.
The Lost Trail.
Camp-Fire and Wigwam.
Lost in the Wilds.
Lost in Samoa. A Tale of Adven-
ture in the Navigator Islands.
Tad; or, "Getting Even" with
Him.

Books by Edward S. Ellis. Illustrated. Cloth, 1s. 6d. each.

Captured by Indians.
The Daughter of the Chieftain

Wolf Ear the Indian.
Astray in the Forest.

**The "World in Pictures." Illustrated throughout. Cheap Edition.
1s. 6d. each.**

All the Russias.
Chats about Germany.
The Eastern Wonderland
(Japan).

Glimpses of South America.
The Land of Temples (India).
The Isles of the Pacific.
Peeps into China.

The Land of Pyramids (Egypt).

Half-Crown Story Books.

Fairway Island.
Heroes of the Indian Empire.
The Cost of a Mistake.
Working to Win.

Perils Afloat and Brigands
Ashore.
Pictures of School Life and Boy-
hood.
At the South Pole.

Books for the Little Ones. Fully Illustrated.

Cassell's Robinson Crusoe.
With 100 Illustrations. Cloth,
3s. 6d.; gilt edges, 5s.
The Old Fairy Tales. With
Original Illustrations. Cloth, 1s.

Cassell's Swiss Family Robinson.
Illustrated. Cloth, 3s. 6d.; gilt
edges, 5s.
The Sunday Scrap Book. With
Several Hundred Illustrations. Paper
boards, 3s. 6d.; cloth, gilt edges, 5s.

Albums for Children. 3s. 6d. each.

The Album for Home, School,
and Play. Containing Stories
by Popular Authors. Illustrated.
My Own Album of Animals.

Picture Album of All Sorts. With
Full-page Illustrations.
The Chat-Chat Album. Illustrated
throughout.

Cassell & Company's Complete Catalogue will be sent post

Free on application to

CASSELL & COMPANY, LIMITED, Ludgate Hill, London.